ŠKODA

ŠKODA Rapid Spaceback Owner's Manual




5JJ012720AC

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

The description of the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help, as well as technical vehicle data, are given in this manual.

Please read this Owner's Manual carefully, because operation in accordance with these instructions is a prerequisite for proper use of the vehicle.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO a.s. (hereinafter referred to only as ŠKODA or manufacturer)

5JJ012720AC

Table of Contents

Board literature 4

Notes 5

Structure and more information about the Operating Instructions 6

Abbreviations

Safety

Passive Safety 8
- General information 8
- Correct and safe seated position 9

Seat belts 12
- Using seat belts 12
- Inertia reels and belt tensioners 15

Airbag system 16
- Description of the airbag system 16
- Airbag overview 17
- Deactivating airbags 20

Transporting children safely 22
- Child seat 22
- Fastening systems 25

Using the system

Cockpit 29
- Overview 28

Instruments and Indicator Lights 30
- Instrument cluster 30
- Indicator lights 34

Information system 41
- Driver information system 41
- Multifunction display (MFD) 43
- MAXI DOT display 46
- Service interval display 47

Unlocking and opening 49
- Unlocking and locking 49
- Anti-theft alarm system 53
- Luggage compartment lid 54
- Power windows 55
- Mechanical windows 57

Lights and visibility 58
- Lights 58
- Interior lighting 63
- Visibility 64
- Windscreen wipers and washers 65
- Rear mirror 67

Seats and head restraints 69
- Seats and head restraints 69
- Seat features 71

Transporting and practical equipment 73
- Useful equipment 73
- Luggage compartment 80
- Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate) 85
- Roof rack 88

Heating and air conditioning 89
- Heating, ventilation, cooling 89

Communication and multimedia 94
- Universal telephone installation GSM II 94
- Voice control 98
- Multimedia 99
- SmartGate 101

Driving

Starting-off and Driving 104
- Starting and turning off the engine 104
- Brakes and parking 106
- Manual gear changing and pedals 107
- Automatic gearbox 108
- Retraction and economical driving 111
- Driving through water and driving off made-up roads 111

Assist systems 113
- Braking and stabilisation systems 113
- Parking aid 114
- Cruise Control System 115
- START-STOP 116
- Tyre pressure monitoring 119

Hitch and trailer 120
- Hitch 120
- Trailer 125

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance 128
- Service work, adjustments and technical alterations 128
- Washing vehicle 131
- Cleaning vehicle exterior 132
- Interior care 136

Inspecting and replenishing 138
- Fuel 138
- Engine compartment 141
- Engine oil 144
- Coolant 146
- Brake fluid 147
- Vehicle battery 148

Wheels 152
- Tyres and wheel rims 152
- Manufacturer-approved tyre variants 155
- Winter operation 156

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help 158
Emergency equipment 158
Reserve and temporary spare wheel 159
Changing a wheel 160
Puncture set 164
Jump-starting 166
Towing the vehicle 168
Remote control 170
Emergency unlocking/locking 170
Replacing windscreen wiper blades 171

Fuses and light bulbs 173
Fuses 173
Replacing bulbs 176

Technical data

Technical data 181
Vehicle data 181

Index

Board literature

You always find these **Operating Instructions** and the **Service Plan** in the on-board literature for your vehicle.

Depending on the equipment, the on-board literature can also contain **The radio instruction manual** or **Manual of the navigation system**and in some countries also the brochure **On the road**.

Owner's Manual
These operating instructions apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

This owner's manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The level of equipment in your vehicle refers to your purchase contract for the vehicle. For questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner, if required.

The **Pictures** in this manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. pursues a policy of constant product and model development. Changes in terms of supply scope are possible at any time with regard to design, equipment and technology. The information listed in this operating manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

It is therefore not possible for legal claims to be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in this Owner's Manual.

Service schedule
The service plan includes the documentation of the vehicle handover information with regard to warranty and service events.

The radio instruction manual
The instruction manual of the radio contains a description of the operation of the radio, and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

Instruction manual of the navigation system
The instruction manual of the navigation system includes a description of the operation of the navigation system, and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

On The Move Brochure
The On The Move Brochure contains phone numbers of importers and service offices in individual countries and emergency numbers.

Notes

Terms used
The on-board literature contains the following terms relating to the service work for your vehicle.

"Specialist garage" - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist garage can be a ŠKODA partner, a ŠKODA service partner or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA service partner" - A Workshop that has been contractually authorised by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to perform service tasks on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA partner" - A company that has been authorised by the manufacturer ŠKODA AUTO a.s. or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Explanation of symbols
An overview of the symbols used in the instruction manual and a brief explanation of their meaning.

- Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings.
- ▶ Continuation of the module on the next page.
- Situations where the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible.
- ® Trademark.
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display.
- Text display in the segment display.

WARNING
Texts with this symbol draw attention to threats of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION
Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

For the sake of the environment
Texts with this symbol contain information on environmental protection as well as tips for economical operation.

Note
Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Structure and more information about the Operating Instructions

Structure of the manual
The operating manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Section** (e.g. Safety) - the title of the Section is always indicated at the lower left side
  - **Main chapters** (e.g. Airbag System) - the title of the main chapter is always indicated at the lower right side
    - **Chapter** (e.g. Airbag Overview)
      - 🕮 **Introduction to the topic** - Module Overview within the chapter introductory information about the chapter content, if necessary, valid for the entire chapter notes
      - **Module** (e.g. Front Airbags)

Information Search
When searching for information in the operating instructions, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the manual.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units
The volume, weight, speed and length data are given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

Display
In this owner's manual, the screen on the MAXI DOT display is used as the display illustration, provided nothing is otherwise stated.

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
A2DP	a Bluetooth software profile for a one-way transfer of audio data
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AG	Automatic gearbox
AGM	Vehicle battery type
TCS	Traction control
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
ET	Rim depth
EU	European Union
GSM	Global System for Mobile communications
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for the engine output
MDI	Inputs for connecting external devices
MFD	Multifunction display
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	personal identification number
SIM card	a card for the identification of the mobile network operator
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbo charging and common rail injection system
TSI	Petrol engine with turbo charging and direct injection
VIN	Vehicle identification number
Wi-Fi	wireless data network

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Before setting off 8
Driving safety 8
Safety equipment 8

In this section you will find important information, tips and notes on the subject of passive safety in your vehicle.

We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, child seats and safety of children.

WARNING

- This chapter contains important information on how to use the vehicle for the driver and his occupants.
- You can find further information on safety concerning you and those travelling with you in the following chapters of this owner's manual.
- The complete on-board literature should always be in the vehicle. This applies in particular, if you rent out or sell the vehicle.

Before setting off

Read and observe ! on page 8 first.

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- ✓ Ensure that the lighting and the turn signal system are functioning properly.
- ✓ Ensure that the function of the wipers and the condition of the wiper blades are free of any defects.
- ✓ Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- ✓ Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed.
- ✓ Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- ✓ Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- ✓ Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
- ✓ Secure all items of luggage.
- ✓ Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
- ✓ Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- ✓ Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- ✓ Protect children in suitable child seats with correctly fastened seat belts » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.
- ✓ Adopt the correct seated position » page 9, *Correct and safe seated position*. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position.

Driving safety

Read and observe ! on page 8 first.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and his occupants. If your driving safety is effected, you place yourself and the oncoming traffic at risk.

The following guidelines must therefore be observed.

- ✓ Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls.
- ✓ Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, e.g. due to medication, alcohol or drugs.
- ✓ Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- ✓ Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- ✓ Take regular breaks on long journeys – at least every two hours.

Safety equipment

Read and observe ! on page 8 first.

The following list contains only part of the safety equipment in your vehicle.

- › Three-point seat belts for all the seats.
- › Belt force limiters for the front seats.
- › Belt tensioners for the front seats.
- › Seat belt height adjusters for the front seats.
- › Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger.
- › Side airbags.
- › Head airbags.
- › Anchoring points for child seats using the ISOFIX system.

› Anchoring points for child seats using the TOP TETHER system.
› Head restraints adjustable for height[1].
› Adjustable steering column.

The specified safety equipment works together, in order to optimally protect you and those travelling with you in accident situations.

The safety equipment does not protect you or the people travelling with you, if you or your occupants adopt an incorrect seated position or the equipment is not correctly adjusted or used.

If the seat belt is not fastened properly, this may result in injuries if an airbag is activated in the event of an accident.

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct seated position for the driver ____ 9
Adjusting the steering wheel position ____ 10
Correct seated position for the front passenger ____ 10
Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats ____ 11
Examples of incorrect seated positions ____ 11

WARNING

- The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
- Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 22, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
- If the occupant adopts an incorrect seated position, he is exposed to life-threatening injuries, in case he is hit by a deployed airbag.
- If the occupants on the rear seats are not sitting upright, the risk of injury is increased due to incorrect routing of the seat belt.
- The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

Correct seated position for the driver

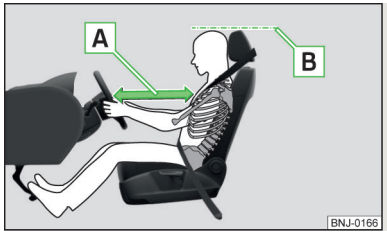


Fig. 1
The correct distance of the driver to the steering wheel/correctly adjusted head restraint

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance A between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 1. Adjust the steering wheel » page 10, *Adjusting the steering wheel position*.
✓ Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the top of your head [1] B » Fig. 1.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 12, *Using seat belts*.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 69.

WARNING

- Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.
- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!

[1] Not valid for sports seat.

WARNING (Continued)

- When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle or inner edge of the steering wheel). In such cases, you could severely injure the arms, hands and head when the driver airbag is deployed.
- Ensure that there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get caught behind the pedals when driving or applying the braking. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



Fig. 2 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Swing the safety lever under the steering wheel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 2.
› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the holder until it stops in arrow direction 3.

WARNING

- The lever for adjusting the steering wheel must be locked whilst driving so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position during the journey – risk of accident!
- Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!

Correct seated position for the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
✓ Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the top of your head [1] B » Fig. 1 *on page 9*.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 12, *Using seat belts*.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 69.

In exceptional cases the front passenger airbag can be deactivated » page 20, *Deactivating airbags*.

WARNING

- Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard!
- Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surfaces of the seats. You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

[1] Not valid for sports seat.

Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

To reduce the risk of injury in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident, the occupants on the rear seats must observe the following.

- ✓ Adjust the head restraint such that the top edge of the head restraint is at the same level as the upper part of the head B » Fig. 1 *on page 9*.
- ✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 12, *Using seat belts*.
- ✓ Use a suitable child restraint system if transporting children in the vehicle » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.

Adjust the seats and head restraints » page 69.

Examples of incorrect seated positions

Read and observe ! on page 9 first.

Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if seat belts are fastened correctly.

Incorrect seated positions considerably reduce the protective functions of the seat belts and therefore increase the risk of injury due to an incorrect routing of the seat belt.

The driver is fully responsible for himself and passengers, especially children. Never allow a passenger to adopt an incorrect seated position when the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death. This list is not complete, however we would like you to familiarise yourself with this subject.

Observe the following instructions while driving.

- ✓ Do not stand up.
- ✓ Do not stand on the seats.
- ✓ Do not kneel on the seats.
- ✓ Do not tilt the seat backrest too far back.
- ✓ Do not lean against the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not lie on the rear seats.
- ✓ Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- ✓ Do not sit facing to the side.
- ✓ Do not lean out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet out of the window.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the dash panel.
- ✓ Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.
- ✓ Do not allow anybody to travel in the footwell.
- ✓ Do not drive without fastening your seat belt.
- ✓ Do not delay in the luggage compartment.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

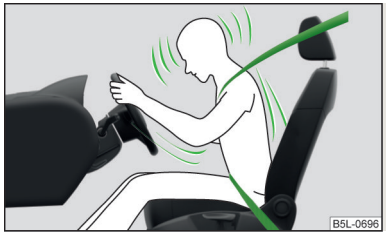


Fig. 3
Driver wearing seat belt

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The physical principle of a frontal collision 13
Fastening and unfastening seat belts 14
Belt height adjustment on the front seats 15

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

Correctly fastened seat belts hold occupants of the car in the correct seated position » Fig. 3.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

Occupants of a vehicle who have correctly fastened their seat belts have the major benefit of the fact that the kinetic energy is absorbed as effectively as possible by the belts.

The structure of the front end of the vehicle and other passive safety measures, such as the airbag system, also contribute to the kinetic energy being reduced as effectively as possible. The energy produced is thus absorbed and there is less risk of injury.

Particular safety aspects must be observed when transporting children in the vehicle » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.

WARNING

- Fasten your seat belt before each journey – even when driving in town! This also applies to the passengers seated at the rear – risk of injury!
- Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child » page 14, *Fastening and unfastening seat belts*.
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 9, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on the correct routing of the belt

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder – on no account across your neck.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. spectacles, ball-point pens, bunches of keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of the safety belts

- Never use one seat belt to secure two persons (including children). The seatbelt must not be placed over a child who is sitting on the lap of another passenger.

WARNING (Continued)

- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked, otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- It is prohibited to use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e. g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 72.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of the safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 138.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If any damage to the seat belts, seat belt connections, inertia reel or the lock is detected, the relevant seat belt must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- Damaged seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident and were therefore stretched, must be replaced – this is best done by a specialist garage. The anchorage points of the belts must also be inspected. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Note

The national legal requirements must be observed when using seat belts.

The physical principle of a frontal collision

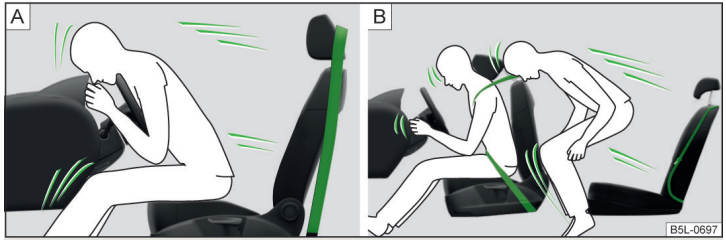


Fig. 4 **Driver without a fastened seat belt/rear seat passenger without a fastened seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

As soon as the vehicle is moving, so-called kinetic energy (the energy of motion) is produced both in terms of the car as well as in terms of the occupants.

The magnitude of this kinetic energy depends essentially on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and on the weight of the vehicle including the occupants. The greater the speed and weight increase, the greater the amount of energy which has to be absorbed in the event of an accident.

The speed of the vehicle is the most important factor. Doubling the speed of the vehicle from 25 km/h up to 50 km/hour increases the kinetic energy four times.

The idea that it is possible to support your body with your hands in a minor accident is incorrect. Even in a collision at only a low speed, the forces acting on the body are such that it is no longer possible to support your body.

Even if you only drive at a speed of 30-50 km/h, the forces that your body is exposed to in the event of an accident can exceed a metric ton (1000 kg).

For example, a person's weight of 80 kg “increases” to 4.8 tons (4,800 kg) at 50 km/h.

In the event of a frontal collision, occupants of the car not wearing a seat belt are thrown forward and strike parts of the interior of the car, such as the steering wheel, dash panel, windscreen in ways which cannot be controlled » Fig. 4 - A. In certain circumstances you could even be thrown out of the vehicle, which could cause life threatening or even fatal injuries.

It is also important that rear passengers fasten their seat belts, as they could otherwise be thrown through the vehicle in an uncontrolled manner in the event of an accident.

Rear seat passengers who have not fastened their seat belts are a danger not only to themselves but also to those seated at the front » Fig. 4 - B.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

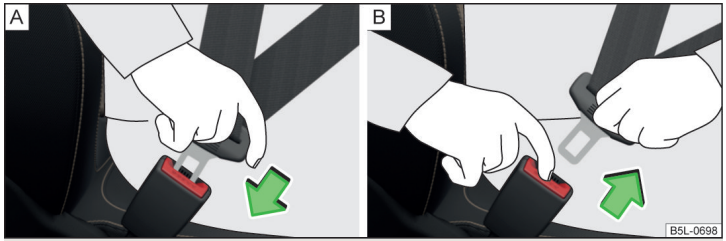


Fig. 5 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

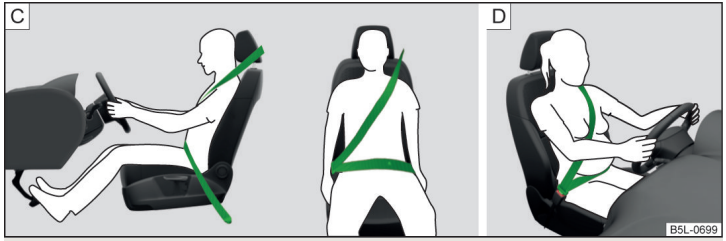


Fig. 6 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

Fasten

› Correctly adjust the front seat and head restraint[1] before fastening the seat belt » page 9.

› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.
› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle for the seat » Fig. 5 - A until it audibly clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

A plastic knob in the belt webbing holds the belt tongue in a position which is easy to get hold of.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The shoulder part of the seat belt must never run across the neck but must roughly run over the middle of the shoulder and fit snugly against the chest. The lap part of the belt must run across the pelvis, must not be positioned across the stomach and must always fit snugly » Fig. 6 - C.

Expectant women must also always wear a seat belt. This is the only way of ensuring optimal protection for the unborn child.

With pregnant women, the lap part of the belt must be positioned as low as possible on the pelvis to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 6 - D.

Release

Release the seat belt only when the vehicle is stationary.

› Press the red button in the belt buckle » Fig. 5 - B; the lock tongue pops out.
› Manually guide the belt back so that it is easier to fully roll up the webbing, the seat belt does not twist.

! CAUTION

When releasing the seatbelt ensure that the tongue of the lock does not damage the door trim or other parts of the interior.

[1] Not valid for sports seat.

Belt height adjustment on the front seats

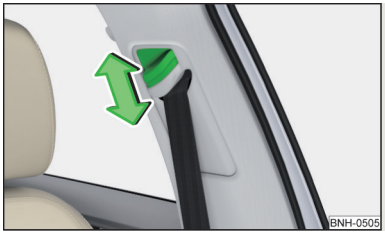


Fig. 7
Front seat: Seat belt height adjuster

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

The seat belt height adjuster makes it possible to adjust the routing of the front seat belts in the area of the shoulder to the body size.

› Press the seat belt height adjuster and move up or down in the desired direction » Fig. 7.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

Inertia reels and belt tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reels 15
Belt tensioners 15

Inertia reels

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel.

The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

! WARNING

If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

The three-point seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a frontal collision of a certain severity. The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.

The seat belts are automatically tensioned in the event of a collision of a certain severity.

Belt tensioners are not activated in the event of minor frontal collisions, side and rear-end collisions, in the case of a rollover and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced from the front.

! WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system including removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- The protective function of the system is only adequate for a single accident. If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

i Note

- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.
- When disposing of the vehicle or parts of the belt tensioner system, it is important to comply with national legal requirements. ŠKODA service partners are familiar with these regulations and will be able to provide you with detailed information.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description 16
Airbag deployment 16

WARNING

- **An airbag can only offer you optimal protection in combination with a fastened seat belt**.
- The airbag is not a substitute for the seat belt, but instead forms part of the complete passive vehicle safety concept.
- To ensure passengers are protected with the greatest possible effect when the airbag is deployed, the front seats must be correctly adjusted to match the body size » page 9, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- If you do not fasten the seat belts when driving, lean too far forward or adopt an incorrect seated position, you are exposing yourself to increased risk of injury in the event of an accident.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- If there is a fault, the airbag system must be checked by a specialist garage immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind may be made to parts of the airbag system.
- Any work on the airbag system, including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel), must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.
- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- The protective function of the airbag system is sufficient for only one accident. The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed.

System description

Read and observe ! on page 16 first.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 39.

When the airbags are deployed, they fill with gas and inflate.

A grey white or red, non-harmful gas is released when the airbag is inflated. This is perfectly normal and is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following modules.

- Electronic control unit.
- Front airbag for the driver and the front passenger » page 17.
- Side airbags » page 18.
- Head airbags » page 19.
- Airbag warning light in the instrument cluster » page 39.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 20.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag deactivation/activation in the middle of the dash panel » page 20.

Note

- The airbag system needs no maintenance during its working life.
- If you sell your vehicle, provide the complete vehicle documentation to the new owner. Please note that the information relating to the possibility of deactivating the front passenger airbag must be included!
- When disposing of vehicle or parts of the airbag system, it is important to comply with the national legal requirements.

Airbag deployment

Read and observe ! on page 16 first.

The airbags inflate in fractions of a second and at a high speed in order to be able to offer additional protection in the event of an accident.

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

In certain accident situations, the several airbags may be deployed simultaneously.

The airbags **are not deployed** in the case of **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear-end collisions, tilting of the vehicle and vehicle rollover.

Deployment factors
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. An important role is played by factors such as the type of object that the vehicle hits (hard/soft), the impact angle, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor for the deployment of the airbags is the deceleration which occurs. The control unit analyses the nature of the collision and activates the relevant restraint system.

If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
› Driver's front airbag.
› Front passenger airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
› Front side airbag on the side of the accident.
› Head airbags on the side of the accident.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.
› The interior lighting illuminates (if the switch for the interior light is in the door contact position).
› The hazard warning lights are switched on.
› All the doors are unlocked.
› The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.

Airbag overview

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front airbags 17
Side airbags 18
Head airbags 19

Front airbags

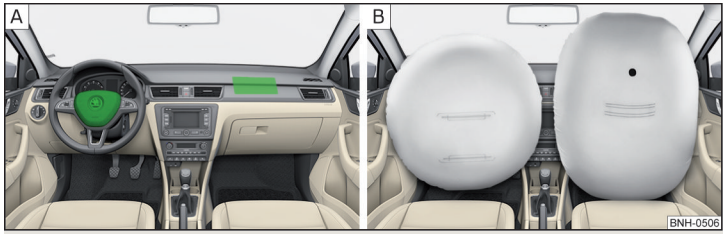


Fig. 8 **Locations of the airbags / gas filled airbags**

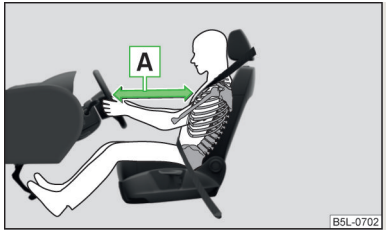


Fig. 9
Safe distance to steering wheel

In the event of a severe frontal collision, the front airbag system offers additional protection for the head and chest area of the driver and front passenger.

The driver's front airbag is located in the steering wheel, the front passenger airbag is located in the instrument panel above the glove compartment » Fig. 8 - A.

The airbags inflate in front of the driver and front passenger when they are deployed » Fig. 8 - B. The forward movement of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- It is important that the driver and front passenger maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or dashboard A » Fig. 9. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you – hazard! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The airbag develops enormous forces when triggered, which can lead to injuries if the sitting position or seated position is not correct.
- There must not by any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the front seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag.

WARNING

Front airbag and transporting children

- Never transport children on the front seat of a vehicle without using a proper restraint system. If airbags are deployed in the event of an accident, the child might suffer severe or even fatal injuries!
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 20, *Deactivating airbags*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed. When transporting a child on the front passenger seat, pay attention to any relevant national regulations regarding the use of child safety seats.

WARNING

General information

- The steering wheel and the surface of the airbag module in the dash panel on the passenger side must not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. These parts should only be cleaned with a cloth that is dry or has been moistened with water. No objects such as cup holders, mobile phone mounts, etc. must be attached to the covers of the airbag modules or be located within their immediate vicinity.
- Never place objects on the surface of the front passenger airbag module in the dash panel.

Note

- In vehicles with head airbags, the lettering **AIRBAG** can be seen on the steering wheel.
- In vehicles with front passenger airbags, the lettering **AIRBAG** is located on the dash panel on the passenger side.

Side airbags

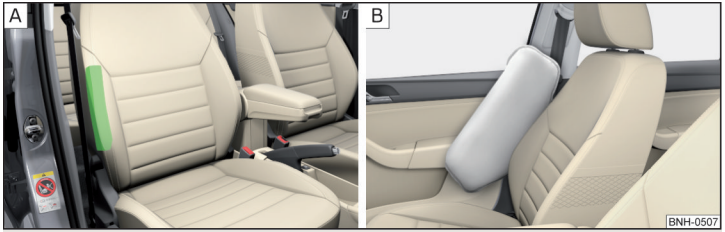


Fig. 10 **Location of the side airbag in the driver's seat/gas-filled side airbag**

In the event of severe side collisions, the side airbag system provides additional protection for the upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) of passengers in the vehicle.

The side airbags are housed in the upholstery of the front seat backrests » Fig. 10 - A.

When the side airbags » Fig. 10 - B are deployed, the head airbag and belt tensioner are also automatically deployed on the relevant side.

The load of the occupants is cushioned when plunging into the fully inflated airbag and the risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

WARNING

Information on correct seated position

- Your head should never be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag. You might suffer severe injuries in the event of an accident. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 24, *Child safety and side airbag*.

WARNING (Continued)

- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. No accessories, such as cup holders, should be attached to the doors.
- If children adopt an incorrect seated position when travelling, they may be exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident. This can result in serious injuries » page 22, *Child seat*.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Ensure that there are no excessive forces, such as violent knocks, kicks etc., impact on the backrests of the seats otherwise the system may be damaged. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of the type expressly authorized by ŠKODA. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers in the area of the side airbag module must be repaired immediately by a specialist garage.
- The airbag modules in the front seats must not display any damage, cracks or deep scratches. It is not permissible to use force in order to open the modules.

Note

In vehicles with side airbags a label with the lettering AIRBAG is located on the front seat backrests.

Head airbags

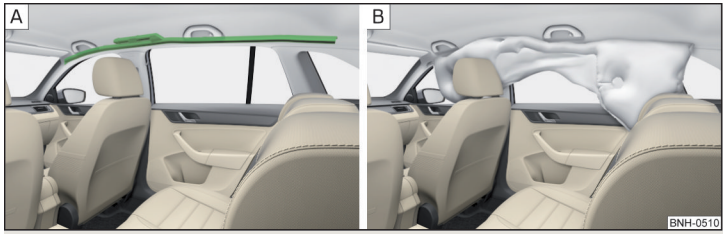


Fig. 11 **Location of the head airbag/gas-filled head airbag**

In the event of a severe side collision, the head airbag system offers additional protection for the head and neck area of passengers.

The head airbags are positioned above the doors on both sides of the vehicle interior » Fig. 11 - A.

In the event of a **side collision** the head airbag is deployed together with the relevant side airbag and the front seat belt tensioner on the side of the car on which the accident occurs.

When deployed, the airbag covers the window area of the front and rear doors, as well as the area of the door pillar » Fig. 11 - B.

Head impact with interior parts is reduced by the inflated head airbag. The reduction in any impact to the head and the resultant minimizing of any movements of the head additionally reduce the risk of injuries to the neck area.

WARNING

- There must not be any objects in the deployment area of the head airbags which might prevent the airbags from inflating properly.
- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks fitted in the vehicle. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing. Additionally, clothes hangers must not be used to hang up items of clothing.

WARNING (Continued)

- The installation of impermissible accessories in the vicinity of the head airbags can considerably impair the protection offered by the head airbag in the event of it being deployed. When the deployed head airbag is inflated, parts of the accessories fitted could be thrown into the interior of the car and injure the occupants » page 128.
- The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects, such as ball-point pens, etc. are attached to them. This might result in injuries to the occupants if the head airbag is deployed.
- There must not be any further persons, animals or objects positioned between the seated occupants and the deployment area of the airbag. In addition, none of the occupants should lean their head out of the window when driving, or extend their arms and hands out of the window.

Note

In vehicles with head airbags, the lettering **AIRBAG** can be seen on the B column cladding.

Deactivating airbags

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags ____ 20
Deactivating the front passenger airbag ____ 20

Deactivating airbags

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- If using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat (due to different legal regulations, the airbag must be deactivated if using a forwards-facing child seat in some countries) » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » page 20.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

Monitoring the airbag system

The operational capability of the airbag system is monitored electronically, including when one of the airbags is switched off.

Airbag deactivated using diagnostic equipment

- The warning light illuminates for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes again for approximately 12 seconds.

Front passenger airbag deactivated using the key switch in the storage compartment

- The warning light lights up for approximately 3 seconds after the ignition is switched on.
- The warning light OFF » Fig. 12 *on page 20* - B comes on after the ignition has been switched on.

Note

- The national regulations for switching off airbags must be observed.
- A ŠKODA service partner will be able to inform you which, if any, of your vehicle's airbags can or must be deactivated.

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

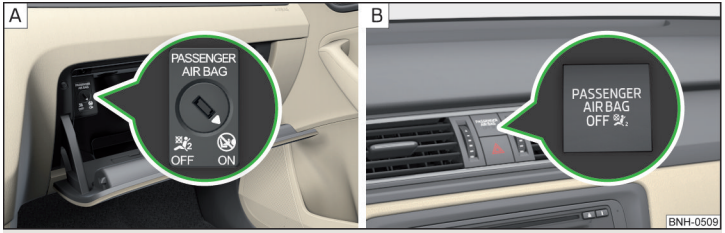


Fig. 12 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front seat passenger airbag deactivation**

Only the front passenger airbag is deactivated with the key switch.

Switching off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **OFF** » Fig. 12 - A.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the warning light OFF [1] under the text **PASSENGER AIR BAG** » Fig. 12- B lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **ON** » Fig. 12 - A.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Check that the warning light OFF under the text **PASSENGER AIR BAG** » Fig. 12 - B does not illuminate after the ignition is switched on.

! WARNING

- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the OFF warning light is flashing, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.
- The key cannot be inserted in the key switch while driving.
  - Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag!
  - The airbag could be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!

! CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

[1] The warning light OFF comes on for a few seconds after the ignition is switched on, goes out for about 1 second and then comes on again.

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat 23
Use of the child seat in the front passenger seat 24
Child safety and side airbag 24
Classification of child seats 24
Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt 24

Children are generally safer on the rear seats than on the front passenger seat.

In contrast to adults, the muscles and bone structure of children are not yet fully developed. Thus children are exposed to increased risk of injury.

Children should be transported in accordance with the relevant statutory provisions.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 standard must be used. ECE-R stands for: Economic Commission for Europe – Regulation.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard have a test seal that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- The national legal requirements must be observed when using child seats.
- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Certain outside climatic conditions can cause life-threatening temperatures in the vehicle.
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat. Further information » page 23, *Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat*.

CAUTION

- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the head restraints still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 70. After removing the child seat, reinstall the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Does not apply to Taiwan



Fig. 13
Sticker on the B column on the front passenger side



Fig. 14 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 22 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag installed in front of it. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you install child seats on the rear seats whenever possible.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.

› The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat » !.
› If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
› If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
› With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
› Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
› Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
› Place and fasten the child seat on the seat and the child in the child seat according to the specifications in the manufacturer's user manual of the child seat .

! WARNING

- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 20, *Deactivating airbags*.
- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found in one of the following locations.
  - On the B-column on the front passenger side » Fig. 13. The sticker is visible upon opening the front passenger door.
  - On the front passenger's sun visor. In some countries, the sticker is located on the front seat passenger's sun visor » Fig. 14.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 or 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.
- As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be re-activated again.

Use of the child seat in the front passenger seat

Applies to Taiwan



Fig. 15 **Front passenger sun visor / label**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 22 first.

No babies, infants or children are to be carried on the passenger seat.

This fact is also indicated by the label that can be found on the passenger's sun visor » Fig. 15.

Child safety and side airbag

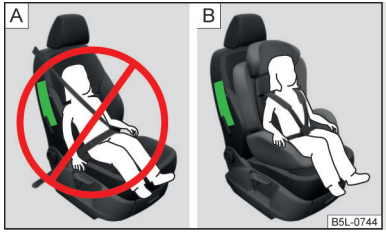


Fig. 16
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! and ! on page 22 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 16 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag to ensure that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 16 - B.

! WARNING

- Children must never be seated with their head in the deployment area of the side airbag – risk of injury!
- Do not place any objects within the deployment area of the side airbags – risk of injury!

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! and ! on page 22 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child	Approximate age
0	up to 10 kg	up to 9 months
0+	up to 13 kg	up to 18 months
1	9 - 18 kg	up to 4 years
2	15 - 25 kg	up to 7 years
3	22 - 36 kg	over 7 years

Use of child seats fastened with a seat belt

Read and observe ! and ! on page 22 first.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats external	Rear seat Centre
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9 - 18 kg	U	U	U
2 15 - 25 kg	U	U	U
3 22 - 36 kg	U	U	U

U "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed to be attached to the seat using the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system 25
Use of child seats with the ISOFIX-system 25
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system 26

Attachment points of the ISOFIX-system



Fig. 17
Labels on the ISOFIX system

ISOFIX represents a system for a fast and secure child seat mounting.

There are two locking eyes between the rear exterior seats for fixing the child seat in place, using the ISOFIX-system. The places are marked with labels with the ISOFIX logo » Fig. 17.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX-system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points eyes intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX-system – risk of death!

Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX-system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with an ISOFIX-system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX-system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child seats with the ISOFIX-system

Overview of the usefulness of child seats fastened with the ISOFIX-system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
1 9 - 18 kg	D	**X**	**IL-SU** **IUF**	**X**
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			
2 15 - 25 kg		**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
3 22 - 36 kg		**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**

[a)] The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.

IL-SU The seat is suited for installation of a **ISOFIX**-child seat with the "Semi-Universal" approval. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the **ISOFIX**-system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of a **ISOFIX**-child seat with the approval "Universal" and attachment with the **TOP TETHER**-system belt.

X The seat is not fitted with **ISOFIX**-system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

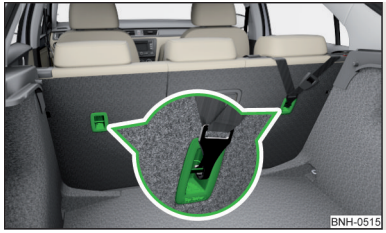


Fig. 18
Anchor eyelets on the TOP TETHER system

TOP TETHER represents a fastening system, which restricts movements of the upper part of the child seat.

The anchor eyelets for attaching the belt for a child seat with the **TOP TETHER**-system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 18.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the **TOP TETHER**-system.
- Only use child seats with the **TOP TETHER**-system on the seats with the locking eyes.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.
- On no account should you equip your vehicle, e.g. mount screws or other anchorage points.

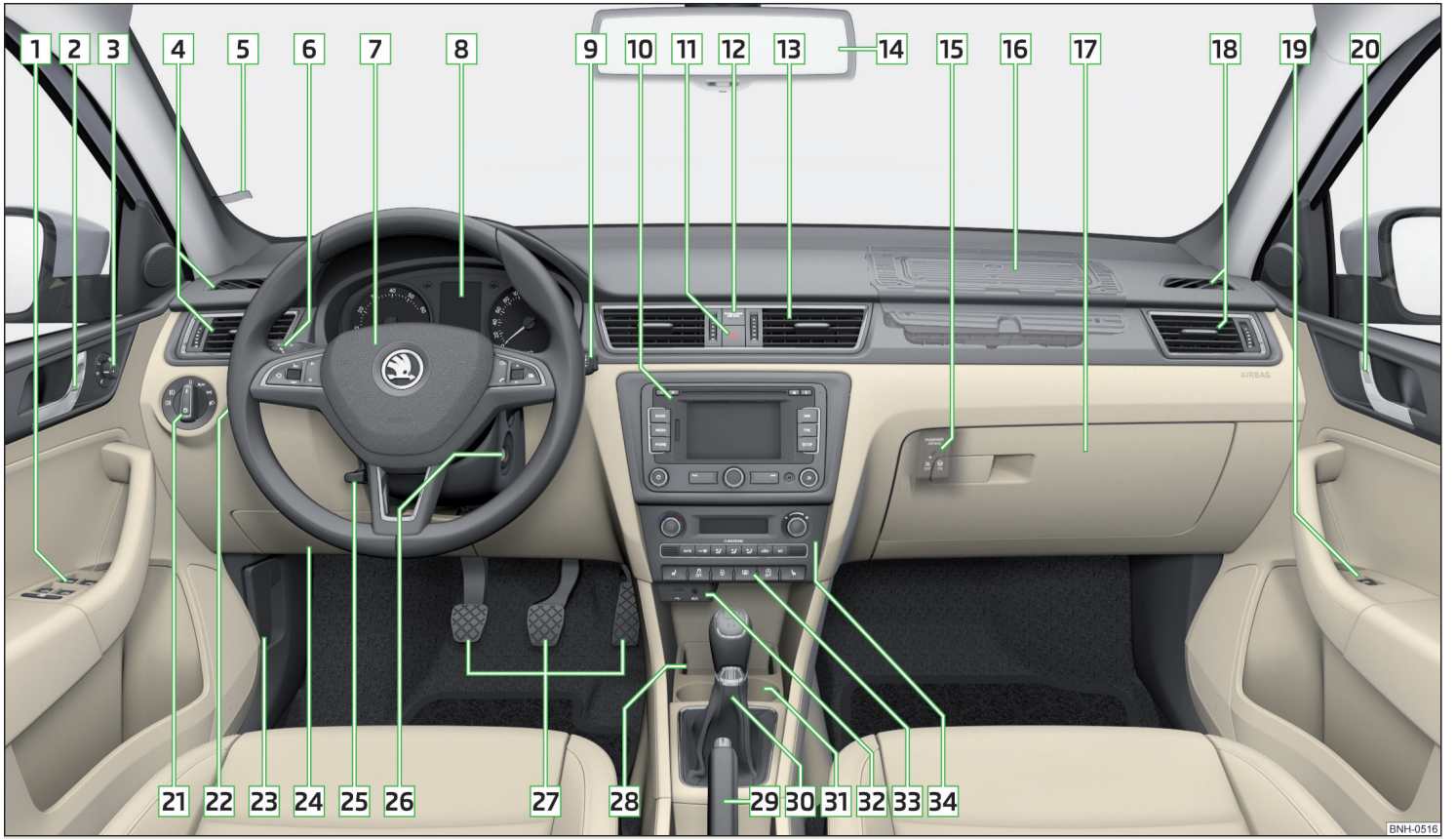


Fig. 19 **Cockpit**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1 Electrical power windows — 56
2 Door opening lever — 51
3 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 68
4 Air outlet vents — 90
5 Parking ticket holder — 74
6 Operating lever:
› Turn signal light, headlight and parking light, headlight flasher — 60
› Speed regulating system — 115
7 Steering wheel:
› With horn
› With driver's front airbag — 17
› with push-buttons for radio, navigation system and mobile phone — 94
› With buttons for the operation of the information system — 41
8 Instrument cluster — 30
9 Operating lever:
› Windscreen wiper and wash system — 66
› Information system — 41
10 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Radio
› Navigation system
11 Button for hazard warning light system — 62
12 Warning light for the deactivated front seat passenger airbag — 20
13 Air outlets in the central part of the dash panel — 90
14 Interior rear-view mirror — 67
15 Key switch for switching off the passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 20
16 Front passenger airbag — 17
17 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 78
18 Air outlet vents — 90
19 Power window in the front passenger door — 55
20 Door opening lever — 51
21 Light switch — 58
22 Headlight range control (in the dashboard) — 59
23 Bonnet release lever — 142
24 Fuse box in the dashboard — 173
25 Lever for adjusting the steering wheel — 10
26 Ignition lock — 105
27 Pedals — 108
28 Storage compartment — 74
29 Handbrake lever — 107
30 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Gear shift lever (manual gearbox) — 108
› Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 109
31 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Cup holder — 74
› Multimedia holder — 77
› Ashtrays — 76
32 Multi-Device Interface (MDI) input — 101
33 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
› Seat heater on the front left seat — 71
› Electronic Stability Control (ESC) — 113
› Central locking system — 52
› Rear window heater — 64
› START - STOP — 116
› Seat heater on the front right seat — 71
34 Depending on equipment fitted:
› Operating controls for the heating — 91
› Operating controls for the air conditioning system — 91
› Operating controls for Climatronic — 92

Note

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 19. The symbols on the controls and switches are the same as for left-hand drive models.

Instruments and Indicator Lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview 30
Revolution counter 31
Display 31
Speedometer 31
Coolant temperature gauge 32
Fuel gauge 32
Counter for distance driven 33
33
Display of the second speed 33
Auto Check Control 33

The instrument cluster gives the driver basic information such as the current speed, engine speed, the state of some vehicle systems and the like.

Fault display
If there is a fault in the instrument cluster, the **Error** message will appear in the display.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver you are fully responsible for road safety.

Note

When the ignition is on, the instrument cluster is illuminated[1]. The brightness level is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient lighting.

Overview

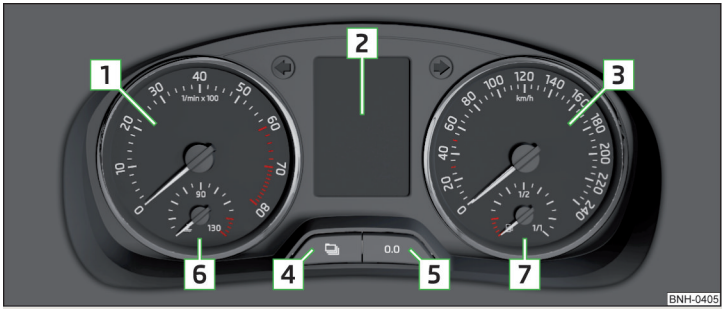


Fig. 20 **Instrument cluster - Version 1**

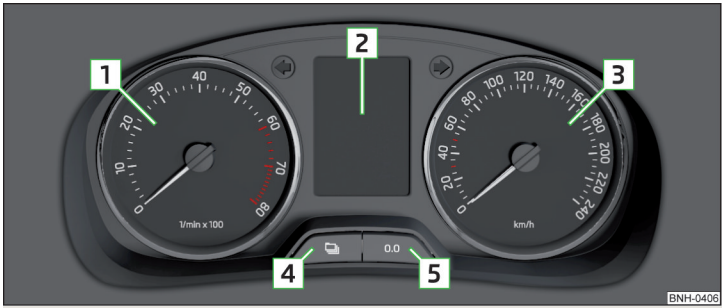


Fig. 21 **Instrument cluster - Version 2**

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 31
› with warning lights » page 34
2 Display » page 31

[1] Applies to cars with the instrument cluster - Version 1.

3 Speedometer » page 31
› with warning lights » page 34
4 Button for display mode:
› Time settings » page 33
› Enable/disable the display of the second speed[1] » page 33
› Service intervals - Display of the number of days and kilometres remaining until the next service[1] » page 47
5 Button for:
› Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 33
› Setting the time
› enable / disable the mode selected by means of the 4 key
6 Coolant temperature gauge[2] » page 32
7 Fuel gauge[2] » page 32

Revolution counter

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 20 *on page 30* or » Fig. 21 *on page 30* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the red scale range of the tachometer indicates the maximum permitted engine speed of a driven-in and operating warm engine.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 43.

! CAUTION

The pointer of the tachometer must reach the red area for only a short time - there is a risk of engine damage!

Display

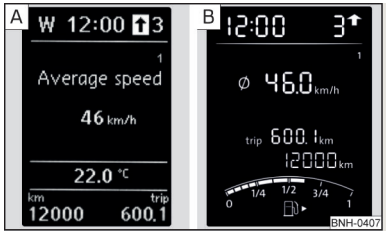


Fig. 22
Display types

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Display types » Fig. 22

A MAXI DOT display.

B Segment display

The following information will be displayed.

› Fuel gauge[3] » page 32
› Distance travelled » page 33
› Time » page 33
› Details of the information system » page 41
› Details of the service interval display » page 47

! CAUTION

Pull out the ignition key if coming in contact with the display (e.g. when cleaning) to prevent any possible damage.

Speedometer

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The speedometer 3 » Fig. 20 *on page 30*or » Fig. 21 *on page 30* displays the current speed.

[1] Applies to cars with the instrument cluster - Version 2.
[2] Applies to cars with the instrument cluster - Version 1.
[3] Applies only to the segment display (instrument cluster - version 2).

Warning at excessive speeds
An audible warning signal will sound when the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h[1]. The audible warning signal is switched off when the vehicle speed falls below 120 km/h.

Coolant temperature gauge

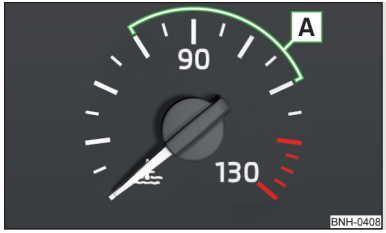


Fig. 23
Coolant temperature gauge

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Applies to cars with the instrument cluster - Version 1 » Fig. 20 *on page 30*.

The display » Fig. 23 provides information on the engine coolant temperature.

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

In vehicles with the instrument cluster - version 2, » Fig. 21 *on page 30* the coolant temperature is indicated only by one of the warning lights » page 36, *Coolant* coming on or going off.

Cold range
If the pointer is still in the left area of the scale, this indicates that the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads. This prevents possible damage to the engine.

The operating range
The engine has reached its operating temperature as soon as the pointer moves into the middle of the scale A » Fig. 23. At very high ambient temperatures or heavy engine loads, the pointer may move even further to the right.

High temperature range
If the pointer reaches the red area of the scale, the coolant temperature is too high. Further information » page 36, *Coolant*.

! CAUTION
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Fuel gauge

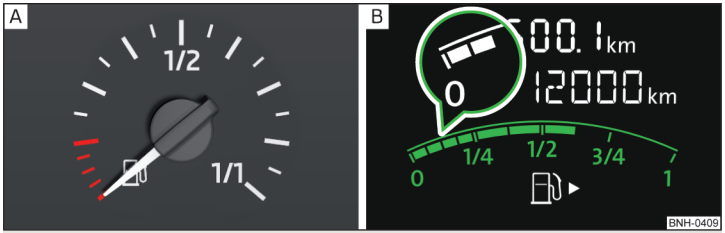


Fig. 24 **Fuel gauge**

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The display provides information on the fuel level in the container.

Fuel gauge types » Fig. 24
A Display in the instrument cluster - Version 1
B In the display of the instrument cluster - Version 2

The display only works if the ignition is switched on.

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 55 litres.

The warning light lights up when the amount of fuel reaches the reserve zone » page 39.

The reserve zone is indicated by the red area of the scale » Fig. 24 - A or by displaying only the last two segments of the scale » Fig. 24 - B in the magnifying glass.

[1] This function only applies to certain countries.

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

- After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates approx. a fraction less. When stopping or during less dynamic driving, the fuel gauge displays the correct fuel level again. This is not a fault.
- The arrow ▶ next to the icon within the fuel gauge displays the installation location of the fuel filler on the right-hand side of the vehicle.

Counter for distance driven

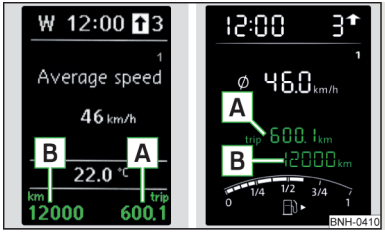


Fig. 25
Display: MAXI DOT display / Segment display

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Display » Fig. 25

A Counter for distance travelled (trip)

B Odometer

Counter for distance travelled (trip)
The daily trip counter shows the distance driven since the time the counter was last reset - in steps of 0.1 km.

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)
› Press and hold the 5 » Fig. 20 *on page 30* or » Fig. 21 *on page 30* button.

Odometer
The odometer indicates the total distance which the vehicle has been driven.

Note

If the second speed display is enabled on vehicles with a segment display, this speed will be shown instead of the odometer.

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Use buttons 4 and 5 » Fig. 20 *on page 30* or » Fig. 21 *on page 30* to set the time.

4 The choice to change the display (hours or minutes).

5 The change of the displayed value.

In vehicles equipped with the MAXI DOT display, it is also possible to set the **Time** in the Time menu » page 47.

Display of the second speed

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

The display can show the current speed in mph[1].

This feature is provided for driving in countries with different speed units.

MAXI DOT display.
The display of the second speed can be set in the **Alt. speed dis.** menu item » page 47, *Settings*.

Segment display
› Press button 4 » Fig. 20 *on page 30* or » Fig. 21 *on page 30*repeatedly, until the odometer display flashes » page 33.
› Press button 5 while the display is flashing.

The second speed is displayed instead of the odometer.

The display of the second speed can be disabled in the same way.

Auto Check Control

Read and observe ! on page 30 first.

Vehicle condition
Certain functions and vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on. ▶

[1] For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

Some error messages and other information are displayed in the MAXI DOT display. The messages are displayed simultaneously with the icons in the MAXI DOT display or with the warning lights in the instrument cluster » page 34, *Indicator lights*.

The menu item **Vehicle status** is shown in the main menu of the MAXI DOT display whenever at least one fault message exists. After selecting this menu, the first of the error messages is displayed.

If there are several error messages, the display will show **1/3**, for example, below the message. This indicates that the first of a total of three error messages is being displayed.

Warning symbols in the MAXI DOT display

	Engine oil pressure too low	» page 36
	Check engine oil level, engine oil sensor defective	» page 36
	Problem with the engine oil pressure	» page 34
	Clutches of the automatic DSG gearbox are too hot	» page 34

Problem with the engine oil pressure
If the symbol is shown in the MAXI DOT display, you must have your vehicle checked immediately by a specialist garage. The information about the maximum permissible engine speed is displayed together with this symbol.

Clutches of the automatic DSG gearbox are too hot
The symbol in the MAXI DOT display indicates that the temperature of the automatic gearbox DSG clutches is too high.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Gearbox overheated. Stop! Log book!

do not continue to drive! Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and wait until the symbol extinguishes – risk of gearbox damage! You can continue your journey as soon as the symbol disappears.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 62. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.

Note

- If the MAXI DOT display shows warning messages, these messages must be confirmed in order to access the main menu » page 42, *Using the information system* .
- As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the symbols are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the symbols continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Indicator lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Handbrake 35
Brake system 35
Seat belt warning light 35
Generator 35
Door open 36
Engine oil 36
Coolant 36
Power steering 37
Stability Control (ESC) 37
Traction control (ASR) 37
Antilock brake system (ABS) 37
Rear fog light 38
Bulb failure 38
Exhaust inspection system 38
Glow plug system (diesel engine) 38
Engine performance check (petrol engine) 38
Diesel particle filter (diesel engine) 38
Fuel reserve 39
Airbag system 39

Tyre inflation pressure 40
Windscreen washer fluid 40
Turn signal system 40
Fog lights 40
Cruise control system 41
Brake pedal (automatic gearbox) 41
Main beam 41

The warning lights indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test.

If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

WARNING

- Ignoring illuminated indicator lights and related messages or instructions in the instrument cluster display may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
- If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning lights » page 62. The warning triangle must be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 141, *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if the handbrake is applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h for at least 3 seconds while the handbrake is applied.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Release parking brake!

Brake system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if the brake fluid level in the braking system is too low or there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Brake fluid: Log book!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the level of the brake fluid » page 148 ».

WARNING

- If the warning light illuminates simultaneously with warning light » page 37, *Antilock brake system (ABS)*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the braking system or the ABS system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Seat belt warning light

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** as a reminder for the driver and front passenger to fasten seat belts.

The warning light **goes out**, after the respective seat belt has been fastened.

If the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt and the vehicle speed is more than 20 km/h, the warning light **flashes** and you will hear an acoustic signal.

The warning signal is switched off and the indicator light **remains permanently illuminated** if the driver and front passenger have not fastened their seat belts within the next 90 seconds.

Generator

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the engine is running, the vehicle battery is not being charged.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

If in addition to the warning light the warning light illuminates while driving, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Door open

Read and observe on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates**, if one or several doors or luggage compartment lid are opened.

Engine oil

Read and observe on page 35 first.

The warning light flashes (low oil pressure)
The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Oil pressure: Engine off! Log book!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 145.
› If the oil pressure is too low, top up the engine oil » page 146.

If the oil level is within the specified range and the warning light **flashes** again after the engine is started, **do not continue driving!**

Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

The warning light illuminates (oil quantity too low)
The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Check oil level!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level » page 145.

The warning light will **go out** if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If no engine oil has been replenished, the warning light will **come on** again after driving about 100 km.

The warning light flashes (engine oil level sensor faulty)
The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Oil sensor: Workshop!

If the engine oil level sensor is faulty, the warning light **flashes** several times and an audible signal sounds when the ignition is turned on.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

CAUTION

Do not continue if for some reason it is not possible to fill with engine oil under the current circumstances! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Coolant

Read and observe on page 35 first.

The warning light **remains illuminated**, until the engine reaches operating temperature[1]. Avoid high speeds, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the warning light **illuminates** or **flashes**, either the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Check coolant! Log book!

› Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and check the coolant level » page 147.
› If the coolant level is too low, add coolant to the reservoir » page 147.

If the warning light **does not illuminate**, after adding coolant and switching on the ignition, you may continue your journey.

If the coolant is within the specified range and the warning light is still **illuminated** after switching on the ignition, then there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

› Switch off the ignition.
› Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary » page 175, *Fuses in the engine compartment*.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are OK and the warning light **illuminates** again after switching on the ignition, **do not continue driving!**

[1] Applies to cars with the instrument cluster - Version 2.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Carefully open the coolant expansion bottle. If the engine is hot, the cooling system is pressurized – risk of scalding! It is therefore best to allow the engine to cool down before removing the cap.
- Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may switch itself on automatically even if the ignition is off - a danger of injury is present!

CAUTION

- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Power steering

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the power steering system.

The power steering operates with reduced steering assist or does not function at all.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **flashes**, to show that the ESC is currently operating.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ESC.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

or

Error: Traction control (ASR)

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light **illuminates** immediately after you start the engine, the ESC might be switched off due to technical reasons.

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light **does not illuminate** after you switch the engine back on, the ESR is fully functional again.

Further information » page 113, *Electronic Stability Control (ESC)*.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Traction control (ASR)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **flashes**, the ASR is currently operating.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ASR.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Traction control (ASR)

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light **illuminates** immediately after you start the engine, the ASR might be switched off due to technical reasons.

› Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does **not illuminate any more** after the engine is switched on again, then the ASR is fully functional again.

Further information » page 113, *Traction Control System (TCS)*.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Antilock brake system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the ABS.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: ABS

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

In the event of an ABS fault, the other braking and stabilization systems are turned off » page 113, *Braking and stabilisation systems* .

WARNING

- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!
- If the warning light illuminates simultaneously with warning light » page 35, *Brake system*, **do not continue your journey!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the rear fog light is switched on.

Bulb failure

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** if a lamp is faulty or if an external vehicle lamp is faulty .

The warning light **illuminates** within a few seconds after switching on the ignition or when a light with a faulty lamp is switched **on**.

The following message, for example, may be shown in the MAXI DOT display.

INFORMATION Check front right low beam!

The rear side lights and the licence plate lighting have several light bulbs. The warning light only illuminates if all bulbs in the parking light (in one rear light) or the licence plate lighting are faulty [1]. For this reason, regular check that these light bulbs are working correctly.

Exhaust inspection system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the exhaust inspection system. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Glow plug system (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** after the ignition has been turned **on**. Once the light has gone out, the engine can be started immediately.

If the warning light **does not illuminate** or **does not illuminate continuously**, there is a fault in the glow plug system.

If the warning light begins **to flash** while driving, while driving, a fault exists in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Engine performance check (petrol engine)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the engine control. The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Diesel particle filter (diesel engine)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

If the warning light **illuminates**, rust has accumulated in the filter.

[1] Applies to vehicles with START-STOP system.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light goes out.

✓ 4th or 5th gear engaged (automatic transmission: position S).
✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
✓ Engine speed between 1,800-2,500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning icon **goes out**.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does **not go out** and the warning light begins to **flash**.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Diesel particulate filter: Log book!

The system allows the vehicle to run in emergency mode. After switching the ignition off and on again the indicator light, the indicator light also **illuminates**.

Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

WARNING

- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like.
- Always adjust your speed to suit weather, road, region and traffic conditions. The recommendations indicated by the warning light must not tempt you to disregard the national regulations for road traffic.

CAUTION

- As long as the warning light illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and in certain circumstances a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with increased sulphur content can significantly reduce the service life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA Partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with increased sulphur content.

Note

- To assist the combustion process of the soot particles in the filter, we recommend that regularly driving short distances be avoided.
- If the engine is turned off during the filter cleaning process or shortly afterwards, the cooling fan may turn on automatically for a few minutes.

Fuel reserve

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

When the warning light **illuminates**, this means there is a fuel reserve of less than 7 litres remaining.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Please refuel. Range: ... km

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

The text in the display goes out only after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Airbag system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, there is a fault in the airbag system.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Error: Airbag

The functionality of the airbag system is monitored automatically even if one of the airbags is switched off.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch

› The warning light **illuminates** for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on;;
› The warning light OFF in the display **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** in the middle of the dash panel lights up after switching on the ignition » Fig. 12 *on page 20*.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool

› The warning light **illuminates** for approximately 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then **flashes** again for approximately 12 seconds.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Airbag / belt tensioner deactivated.

WARNING

When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized company.

Tyre inflation pressure

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light (!) is illuminated
If the warning light (!) illuminates while driving, it means one of the tyres has undergone a pressure change.

An audible signal sounds as a warning signal.

- Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
- Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressure » page 153.
- Correct the tyre pressure, if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 160 or use the repair kit » page 164.
- Store the tyre pressure values in the system » page 119.

The warning light (!) flashes for about 1 min. and remains illuminated
If the warning light (!) flashes for approximately 1 min. and remains on, there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

- Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light (!) flashes after starting the engine again, there is a system error.

Seek help from a specialist garage.

The illumination of the warning light (!) can have the following reasons.
- The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
- The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
- Snow chains are mounted.
- A wheel has been changed.

Store the tyre pressure values in the system » page 119.

CAUTION

Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light (!) in the instrument cluster may be delayed or not light up at all.

Note

If the vehicle battery has been disconnected and then reconnected, the indicator light (!) comes on after switching on the ignition. If the warning light does not go out after moving a short distance, this means that there is an error in the system. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Windscreen washer fluid

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the windscreen washer fluid level is too low, the warning light **illuminates**.

The following message is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Top up wash fluid!

Top up with liquid » page 143, *Windscreen washer system*.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

Either the left or the right warning light **flashes** depending on the position of the turn signal lever.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light **flashes** at twice its normal rate.

Switching off the hazard warning light system is switched on will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to **flash**.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the fog lights are operating.

Cruise control system

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the cruise control is active » page 115.

Brake pedal (automatic gearbox)

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

If the warning light **illuminates**, operate the brake pedal.

Main beam

Read and observe ! on page 35 first.

The warning light **illuminates** when the main beam or the headlight flasher is operated.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Using the information system 42
Display a low temperature 42
Gear recommendation 43
Door, boot or engine compartment warning 43

The information system provides the driver with alerts and messages about individual vehicle systems.

This information and advice is shown in the instrument cluster display or indicated by the illumination of the corresponding indicator light in the instrument cluster.

The information system provides the following information and instructions (depending on vehicle equipment).

› Data relating to the multi-function display (MFD) » page 43.
› Data relating to the Maxi DOT display » page 46.
› Service interval display » page 47.
› Auto Check Control » page 33.
› Selector lever positions for an automatic gearbox » page 109.

! WARNING

Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Using the information system

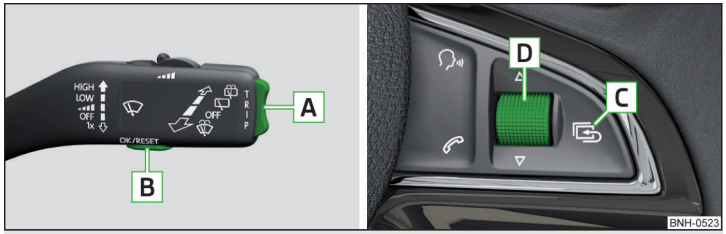


Fig. 26 **Buttons/adjustment wheel: on the operating lever / on the multifunction steering wheel**

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

Some functions of the information system can be operated using the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel » Fig. 26.

Description of the operation

Button / adjustment wheel	Action	Operation
A	Briefly press at the top or below for a longer time	Select data / set data values
	Press top or below for a longer time	Display main menu of the MAXI DOT display » page 46
B	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification
C	Press briefly	To go up one level in the menu of the MAXI DOT display » page 46
	Press and hold button	Display main menu of the MAXI DOT display » page 46
D	Turn upwards or downwards	Select data / set data values
	Press briefly	View information / confirm specification

Display a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display
If the outside temperature while driving drops to below +4°C, the following icon appears on the display in front of the temperature display ❄. An audible signal is emitted.

If the outside temperature is already below +4°C when turning the ignition on, the ❄ icon appears immediately.

Prompt in the segment display[1]
If the outside temperature while driving drops to below +4°C, the temperature display » page 45, *Outside temperature* will show up with the following icon in front ❄. An audible signal is emitted.

If the outside temperature is already below +4°C when turning the ignition on, the temperature display and the ❄ icon appear immediately.

After pressing button A » Fig. 26 *on page 42*, the most recently displayed data is shown.

! WARNING

Even at outside temperatures of around +4 °C, black ice may still be present on the road surface! You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for an indication of whether there is black ice on the road.

[1] Applies to vehicles with the multifunction display (MFA).

Gear recommendation

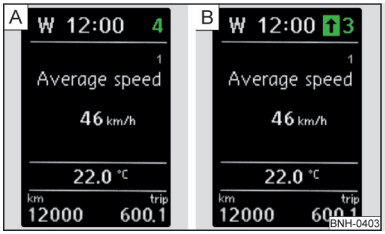


Fig. 27
Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

The function of the gear recommendation is to help reduce fuel consumption.

A suitable gear is engaged, if necessary, a recommendation to shift to high or lower gear is displayed.

Display » Fig. 27

A Optimal gear engaged

B Recommended gear

Recommended gear
The gear recommendation is intended only for vehicles with a manual transmission or for vehicles with an automatic transmission in manual shift mode (Tiptronic).

The **recommended** [1] gear and the arrow icon [2] is displayed.
› ↑ - Recommends that you shift to a **higher** gear.
› ↓ - Recommends that you shift to a **lower** gear

If for example ↑4 is shown in the display with vehicles that have **manual gearboxes** this indicates that it is better to shift from a lower gear to the 4th gear.

If for example ↑4 is shown in the display with vehicles that have **automatic gearboxes** and are in the manual switching mode (Tiptronic), this indicates that it is better to shift from the 4th gear to a higher gear.

WARNING
The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations, such as overtaking.

For the sake of the environment
A suitably selected gear has the following advantages.
- It helps to reduce fuel consumption.
- It reduces the operating noise.
- It protects the environment.
- It benefits the durability and reliability of the engine.

Door, boot or engine compartment warning

Read and observe ! on page 41 first.

Vehicles with a MAXI DOT display
If at least one door, the boot or bonnet is open, the display indicates the relevant **open** door, boot or bonnet vehicle icon.

Vehicles with a segment display
If at least one door or the tailgate is open, the warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates » page 36.

An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Multifunction display (MFD)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Memory 44
Information overview 45
Warning at excessive speeds 46

The driving data is displayed on the multifunction display.

[1] With vehicles that have an automatic gearbox and in the manual switching mode (Tiptronic) the **currently engaged gear is** shown.

[2] For vehicles with segment display the arrow is displayed behind the gear indication.

The multifunction display only operates when the ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, the menu item **MFD** must be selected and confirmed in the main menu » page 46, *MAXI DOT display*.

On vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, there is an option to fade out some of the information » page 47, *Settings*.

! WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- Even at outside temperatures of around +4 °C, black ice may still be present on the road surface! You should therefore not rely solely on the outside temperature display for an indication of whether there is black ice on the road.

i Note

- In certain national versions the displays appear in the Imperial system of measures.
- If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed is not indicated in km/h on the display.
- The amount of fuel consumed will not be indicated.

Memory



Fig. 28
Multi-function display - memory display

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

In memory the values of elements of the multifunction display(e.g. average fuel consumption) are recorded.

The multifunction display is equipped with two memories, **1** and **2**.

Display of the selected memory in the display at the position A. » Fig. 28

1 Single-trip memory
2 Total trip memory

Select memory

› Select the corresponding element of the multifunction display » page 45, *Information overview*.
› Confirm details again to select the desired memory.

Resetting

› Select the corresponding element of the multifunction display » page 45, *Information overview*.
› Select the desired memory.
› Press and hold to confirm the selected memory.

Single-trip memory (memory 1)

The single-trip memory collates the driving information from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off.

New data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information if the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

Total-trip memory (memory 2)

The total-trip memory gathers data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes or 1 999 kilometres driven (S), and a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes or 9 999 kilometres driven (M).

The memory is deleted when either of these limits is reached and the calculation starts all over again.

Unlike the single-trip memory, the total-trip memory is not deleted after a period of interruption of driving of 2 hours.

The following values of the selected memory are set to zero.

› Average fuel consumption.
› Distance driven.
› Average speed.
› Driving time

i Note

Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

Information overview

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

The information overview of the Multifunction Display (the number of items displayed is different depending on equipment).

Outside temperature
The current outside temperature is displayed.

For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display this information is always shown.

Driving time
The time travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the time travelled from a particular moment in time, reset the memory to zero at that point in time » page 44, *Memory*.

The maximum time indicated in both memories is 19 hours and 59 minutes (S) and 99 hours and 59 minutes (M). The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Current fuel consumption
The current fuel consumption level is displayed in litres/100 km[1]. You can use this information to adapt your driving style to the desired fuel consumption.

The display appears in litres/hour if the vehicle is stationary or driving at a low speed[2].

Average fuel consumption
The average fuel consumption since the memory was last erased is displayed in litres/100 km[1].

If you wish to determine the average fuel consumption over a certain period of time, you must set the memory at the start of the new measurement to zero » page 44, *Memory*. After erasing the memory, no value is displayed until you have driven approx. 300 m.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Range
The range indicates the distance you can still drive with your vehicle based on the level of fuel in the tank and with the same style of driving as before.

The display is shown in steps of 10 km. After lighting up of the indicator light the display is shown in steps of 5 km.

The fuel consumption over the last 50 km is used to calculate the information. The range will increase if you drive in a more economical manner.

If the memory is set to zero (after disconnecting the battery), a fuel consumption of 10 l./100 km is calculated for the range; afterwards the value is updated according to the style of driving.

Distance travelled
The distance travelled since the memory was last erased is displayed.

If you want to measure the distance travelled from a particular moment in time, reset the memory to zero at that moment in time » page 44, *Memory*.

The maximum distance indicated in both memories is 1 999 km. (S) and 9 999 km (M). The indicator is set back to zero if this period is exceeded.

Average speed
The average speed since the memory was last erased is displayed in km/hour .

To determine the average speed over a certain period of time, set the memory to zero at the start of the measurement » page 44, *Memory*.

After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

The display is updated regularly while you are driving.

Current driving speed
The current speed displayed is identical to the display on the speedometer 3 » Fig. 20 *on page 30*.

Oil temperature
If the engine oil temperature is in the range of 80-110 °C, the engine operating temperature has been reached.

If the oil temperature is lower than 80 °C or above 110 °C, avoid high engine revs, full throttle and high engine loads.

If the oil temperature is lower than 50 °C or if a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature is present, **– –.–** symbols are displayed instead of the oil temperature.

[1] On some models in certain countries, the display appears in kilometres/litre.
[2] On some models in certain countries, – -.- km/ltr. is displayed when the vehicle is stationary.

Warning at excessive speeds
Set the speed limit, e.g. for the maximum permissible speed in towns » page 46, *Warning at excessive speeds*.

Warning at excessive speeds

Read and observe ! on page 44 first.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** (M) or (S).
› Activate the speed limit option by confirming this menu item[1].
› Set the desired speed limit, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Store the speed limit by confirming the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

The speed limit can be adjusted from 30 km/h to 250 km/h in 5 km/h increments.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** (M) or (S).
› Drive at the desired speed, e.g. 50 km/h.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

If you wish to adjust the set speed limit, you can do so in 5 km/h intervals (e.g. the accepted speed of 47 km/h increases to 50 km/h or decreases to 45 km/h).

› Store the speed limit, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Change or disable speed limit
› Select the menu item **Speed warning** (M) or (S).
› By confirming the stored value, the speed limit is disabled.
› By reconfirming, the option to change the speed limit is activated.

If the set speed limit is exceeded, an audible signal will sound as a warning. The menu item **Speed warning** (MAXI DOT display) or (Segment display) appears in the display at the same time as the set threshold.

The set speed limit value remains stored even after switching off the ignition.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Main menu 46
Settings 47
Compass point display 47

The MAXI DOT display provides you with information about the **current operating state of your vehicle.** Depending on the vehicle equipment, it also provides you with data relating to the radio, multifunction display (MFD), mobile phone, navigation system, automatic gearbox » page 108 and devices connected via the MDI input.

! WARNING
Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.

Main menu

Read and observe ! on page 46 first.

Press and hold button A or C » Fig. 26 *on page 42* to activate the **MAIN MENU**. By briefly pressing the C button you will reach one level higher.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)

- **MFD** (Multifunction display) » page 43
- **Audio** » *Operating instructions for the radio*
- **Navigation** » *Operating instructions for the navigation system*
- **Phone** » page 94;
- **Vehicle status** » page 33
- **Settings** » page 47

The **Audio** and **Navigation** menu items are only displayed when the factory-fitted radio or navigation system is switched on.

[1] If no value is set the output value 30 km/h is automatically displayed.

Note

- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must be verified to access the main menu » page 42, *Using the information system*.
- If the display is not activated at that moment, the menu always shifts to one of the higher levels after approx. 10 seconds.
- Using the factory-fitted radio or navigation system » *Radio operating instructions* or» *navigation system operating instructions*.

Settings

Read and observe ! on page 46 first.

You can change certain settings by means of the MAXI DOT display. The current menu item is shown in the top of the display under a line.

The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle).

Language
You can set the language for the display texts here.

MFD data
Activate or deactivate certain displays of the multifunction display here.

Time
The time, time format (12 or 24 hour indicator) and the changeover between summer/winter time can be set here.

Winter tyres
Here, the speed and the switching on and off of the acoustic signals when exceeding this speed can be adjusted. This function is, for example, used for winter tyres where the maximum permissible speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle » page 152, *Tyres and wheel rims*.

As soon as the parking procedure is completed, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display.

Winter tyres: maximum ... km/h.

Units
The units for the temperature, consumption and distance driven can be set here.

Alt. speed dis.
Here, the display of the second speed in mph[1] can be activated.

Further information » page 33, *Display of the second speed*.

Service
The days and kilometres remaining until the next service can be displayed here.

Factory setting
The display functions can be restored to their factory settings here.

Compass point display

Read and observe ! on page 46 first.

For vehicles with a factory fitted navigation system, an abbreviation for each point of the compass (depending on the current direction of travel) is shown on the top left-hand corner of the display.

The compass point display only operates when the ignition is switched on.

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display 48
Prompt in the segment display 48
Resetting the service interval display 49

The service interval display shows the time and mileage to the next service event.

The service due date is automatically displayed on the display and this information can be displayed manually if necessary.

The kilometre indicator or the days indicator reduces in steps of 100 km or, where applicable, days until the service due date is reached.

The information regarding the service intervals can be found in the service schedule.

[1] For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speed is displayed in km/h.

Note
Information is retained in the Service Interval Display even after the vehicle battery is disconnected.

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display

Oil change service
If an oil change service is **due**, the following message appears: **Oil change in ... km or ... days.**

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Oil change now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on.

Inspection
If an inspection is **due**, the following message appears: **Inspection in ... km or ... days.**

As soon as the service interval date **has been reached**, the message **Inspection now!** appears once the ignition has been switched on.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval
You can view the remaining distance and days until the next service appointment at any time when the ignition is switched on by going to the **Service** menu item » page 47, *Settings* or from the **Vehicle status** in the main menu of the Maxi DOTdisplay. » page 46, *Main menu* .

The following message is displayed for 10 seconds.

Oil change ... km / ... days

Inspection ... km / ... days

Prompt in the segment display

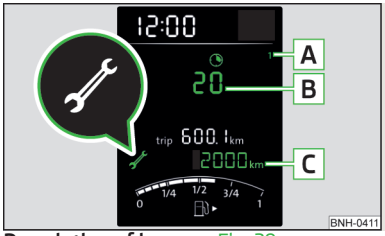


Fig. 29
Segment display: Example of a message

Description of image » Fig. 29
- Service due
- A Differentiating between types of service
- B Days remaining until the next service interval
- C Kilometres remaining until the next service interval[1)]

Differentiating between types of service
The service type is determined by the number in position A » Fig. 29.
1 Oil change service
2 Inspection

Service due
If a service becomes **due**, then the following information is displayed for about 10 seconds » Fig. 29.
- The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position A.
- The symbol and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position B.
- The symbol and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position C.

As soon as the due date for the service **has been reached**, the flashing icon and the message **OIL CHNG** or **INSPEC_** appear in the display for about 20 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

Display the days and distance until the next service interval
You can press button 4 » Fig. 21 *on page 30* repeatedly to display the remaining distance and time to until the next service whenever the ignition is switched on.

1) The kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed instead of the odometer.

Information on the **oil change service** is displayed at first, followed by information on the **inspection** when button 4 is pressed again.
› The number **1** or **2** is displayed in position A.
› The symbol and the number of days remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position B.
› The symbol and the number of kilometres remaining until the next service interval are displayed in position C.

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval
For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display, the values of a new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

With the key on the lock cylinder unlock / lock 50
Unlocking/locking with the remote control key 50
Opening/closing a door 51
Safe securing system 51
Individual settings 52
Locking and unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button 52
Child safety lock 53
Malfunctions 53

Your car is equipped with a central locking system.

The central locking system allows you to lock and unlock **all** doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid at the same time.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the following is true after unlocking
› The turn signal lights flash twice as confirmation that the vehicle has been unlocked.
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.
› The interior light, which is switched by the door contact, comes on.
› The SafeLock system is switched off.
› The indicator light in the driver door stops flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is deactivated.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the SafeLock system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Depending on the equipment configuration, the following is true after locking
› The turn signal lights flash once as confirmation that the vehicle has been locked.
› The doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap are locked.
› The interior lights connected over the door contact go off.

› The SafeLock system is switched on.
› The warning light in the driver door begins flashing.
› The anti-theft alarm system is activated.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. The children might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of injury and accidents! These individuals might also not be able to leave the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the groove of the keys absolutely clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust, etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.
- The battery must be replaced if the central locking or anti-theft alarm system does react to the remote control at less than approx. 3 metres away » page 170.
- When leaving the vehicle, always check if it is locked.
- If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Note

In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

With the key on the lock cylinder unlock / lock

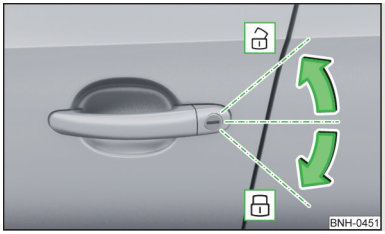


Fig. 30
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

The key allows you to unlock or lock the vehicle via the lock cylinder in the driver's door.

Unlocking / locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 30

Unlocking the vehicle
Locking the vehicle

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key

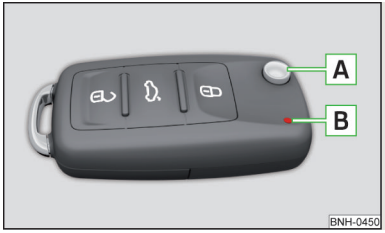


Fig. 31
Remote control key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

Function and description of the remote control key » Fig. 31

Unlocking the vehicle
Locking the vehicle
Unlocking / locking the boot lid
A Button for the fold out / fold in of the key
B Warning light

Unlocking / locking the boot lid
Briefly pressing the symbol key unlocks the boot lid. After unlocking, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Pressing and holding the symbol key releases the boot lid (partially opened).

If the boot lid is unlocked or released with the key symbol on the remote control key, then the lid is automatically locked after closing.

You can set a lock delay » page 55.

CAUTION
- Operation of the remote control may temporarily be affected by signal interference from transmitters close to the car and which operate in the same frequency range (e.g. mobile phone, TV transmitter).
- Only operate the remote control when the doors and boot lid are closed and the vehicle is in your line of sight.
- The operating range of the remote control key is approx. 30 m. But this range of the remote control can be reduced if the batteries are weak.

Note
A ŠKODA partner can also activate/deactivate the acoustic signals on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm system.

Opening/closing a door

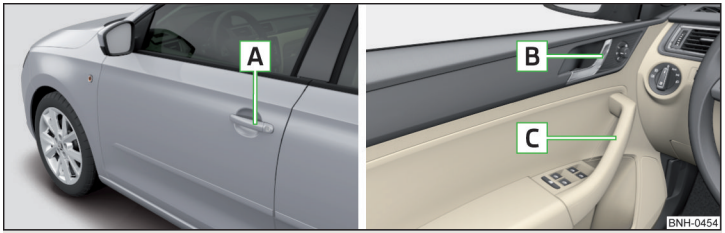


Fig. 32 **Door handle/door opening lever**

Read and observe and on page 50 first.

Opening from the outside
› Unlock the vehicle.
› Pull on door handle A » Fig. 32 on the door you wish to open.

Opening from the inside
› Pull on door opening lever B of the respective door and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside
› Grasp pull handle C and close the door.

WARNING
- Make sure that the door has closed correctly as it can open suddenly while driving – risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – risk of injury!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - there is a risk of death!

Safe securing system

Read and observe and on page 50 first.

The door locks are blocked automatically if the vehicle is locked from the outside. The vehicle cannot be opened from the inside any more.

This fact is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after switching off the ignition.

Check SAFELOCK! Log book!
CHECK DEADLOCK

Switching off
The safe lock can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› By locking twice within 2 seconds.
› By disabling the interior monitoring » page 54, *Interior monitor and towing protection*.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

Switching on
The safelock switches on automatically the next time the vehicle is locked and unlocked.

Switch-off display
The indicator light in the driver door flashes for about 2 seconds fast, goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

Switch-on display
The warning light flashes for around 2 seconds in quick succession, afterwards it begins to flash evenly at longer intervals.

WARNING
If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe and on page 50 first.

Opening a single door
The function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid remain locked and are only unlocked after being opened again.

Automatic locking/unlocking
All doors are locked from a speed of around 15 km/h. The button in the handle of the boot lid is deactivated.

If the ignition key is withdrawn, the car is then automatically unlocked again. It is also possible to unlock the vehicle by pressing the central locking button.

Note
- Individual settings can be carried out in a specialist workshop.
- For some countries with right-hand steering the function of the single door opening is set at the factory.

Locking and unlocking the vehicle with the central locking button



Fig. 33
Central locking button

Read and observe and on page 50 first.

If the vehicle has not been locked from outside, the » Fig. 33 button can be used to unlock or lock the vehicle.

Unlocking / locking » Fig. 33
If the icon in the button is lit, the vehicle is locked.

The central locking system also operates if the ignition is switched off.

The following applies after locking.
› Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
› The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.
› In the event of an accident in which the airbags are deployed, the locked doors are automatically unlocked in order to enable rescuers to gain access to the vehicle.

WARNING
- Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!
- If the Safelock system is switched on » page 51, the door opening levers and the central locking buttons do not operate.

CAUTION
If at least one door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

Child safety lock



Fig. 34 **Rear door: left / right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

Switching the cooling system on and off » Fig. 34

Switching on

Switching off

You can switch the child safety lock on and off using the vehicle key.

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

Failure of the central locking
Upon failure of the central locking system the key only unlocks and locks the driver's door. The other doors and the boot lid can be opened and closed in an emergency.

› Emergency locking of the door » page 171.
› Emergency unlocking of the boot lid » page 171.

Displaying an error
If the indicator light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then lights up for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

Discharged battery in the remote control key
If the red warning light B » Fig. 31 *on page 50* does not flash when you press a button on the remote control key, the battery is empty.

Replace the battery » page 170.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating/deactivating 54
Interior monitor and towing protection 54

The anti-theft alarm system increases the level of protection against people trying to break into the vehicle.

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to only as alarm).

Triggering the alarm
The alarm is triggered when the following unauthorized actions are carried out on the locked vehicle.

› Opening the bonnet.
› Opening the boot lid.
› Opening the doors.
› Manipulation of the ignition lock.
› Towing the vehicle » page 54.
› Movement in the vehicle » page 54.
› Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
› Uncoupling the trailer » page 125, *Attaching and detaching trailers*.

If the driver's door of a vehicle with a remote control is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder, then the alarm is triggered.

Switching off the alarm
The alarm is turned off by pressing the button on the radio remote control key or switching on the ignition.

! CAUTION
Before leaving the vehicle, check that the doors and windows are closed in order to ensure that the alarm system is fully operational.

i Note
The working life of the alarm siren is 5 years.

Activating/deactivating

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

Activating
The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

If the vehicle is unlocked and a door or the boot lid not opened within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically and the safe securing system or anti-theft alarm system will be switched back on. This function is intended to prevent the car being unlocked unintentionally.

Deactivating
The alarm system is deactivated automatically after the vehicle is unlocked. If the vehicle is not opened within 30 seconds, the alarm system is automatically activated again.

Interior monitor and towing protection



Fig. 35
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 53 first.

The interior monitor detects movements inside the car and then triggers the alarm.

The tow-away protection triggers the alarm if a vehicle is registered as being on an inclination.

Activating
The interior monitor and the towing protection are activated automatically after the vehicle is locked.

Deactivating
› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the driver door.
› Press the symbol button OFF » Fig. 35 on the B column of the driver's side.

The illumination of the symbol OFF in the button changes from red to orange.

› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Deactivate the interior monitor and the towing protection if there is a possibility of the alarm being triggered by movements (e.g. by children or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

! CAUTION
- The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.
- The anti-theft alarm system is activated when the vehicle is locked, even if the safe securing system is deactivated. The interior monitor is however not activated.

Luggage compartment lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing 55
Delayed locking of the boot lid 55

! WARNING
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the boot lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – risk of accident!
- Never drive with the boot lid open or unlatched, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, as otherwise it could crack – risk of injury!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

Note

The function of the button in the grip above the licence plate is deactivated when starting off or at a speed of 5 km/hour or more for vehicles with central locking. The function is restored after the vehicle stops and the door is opened.

Opening/closing



Fig. 36 **Opening / closing tailgate**

Read and observe ! on page 54 first.

After unlocking the vehicle, the boot lid can be opened with the button in the handle above the number plate.

Opening / closing tailgate » Fig. 36

1 Unlocking the door
2 Open flap
3 Closing the flap (by pulling the handle)

Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 54 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the symbol button on the remote control key, then the door is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

After activation of delayed locking, the boot lid can be opened again after closing within a limited period.

Delayed locking can be deactivated by a specialist garage at any time.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically. We therefore recommend locking the vehicle with the symbol button on the remote control key.

Power windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening/closing the windows 56
Force limit 56

The electrical power windows can only be operated when the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

The electrical power windows are fitted with a force limiter » page 56. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » page 134, *Windows and external mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- Make sure that the windows are closed whenever you leave the locked vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

▪ When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

▪ The window lift mechanism is equipped with protection against overheating. Repeated opening and closing of the window can cause this mechanism to overheat. If this happens, it will not be possible to operate the window for a short time. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the overheating protection has cooled down.

Opening/closing the windows

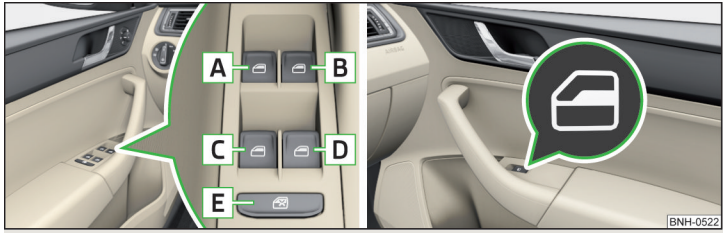


Fig. 37 **Power window buttons**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 55 first.

All windows can be operated from the driver's seat.

Power window buttons » Fig. 37

A Left front door
B Right front door
C Left rear door
D Right rear door
E Disable / enable the buttons in the rear doors

Opening

› Lightly press the appropriate button down and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

The driver's window can be completely opened automatically by briefly pressing the button as far as it will go. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.

Closing

› Pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.

Releasing the button causes the window to halt immediately.

Disable / enable the buttons in the rear doors

› Press the button E » Fig. 37.

When the buttons are disabled in the rear doors, the warning light in the button E illuminates.

! WARNING

If the rear seats are accommodating people who are not completely independent, e.g. children, it is recommended that for safety reasons the buttons in the rear doors are disabled with the button E.

Force limit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 55 first.

The electrical power windows are fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only switched off if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds - **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Mechanical windows

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Open / close window 57

The window can be operated mechanically by means of the handle attached to the respective door panel.

WARNING

The windows should nevertheless be closed carefully – risk of injury!

CAUTION

- In the event that the windows are frozen, first of all eliminate the ice » page 134, *Windows and external mirrors* and only then operate the electrical power windows. Otherwise, the window sealing and the electrical power window mechanism could be damaged.
- Make sure that the windows are closed whenever you leave the locked vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

At high speeds, you should keep the windows closed to prevent unnecessarily high fuel consumption.

Note

When driving always use the existing heating, air conditioning and ventilation system for ventilating the interior of the vehicle. If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Open / close window

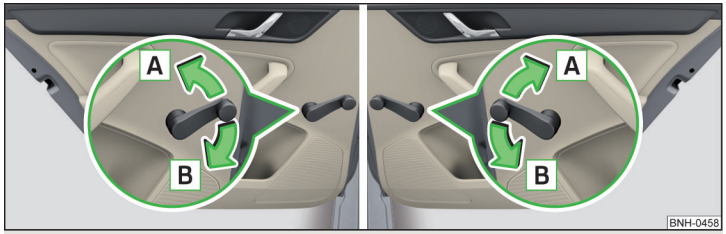


Fig. 38 **Window operation: left / right**

Read and observe and on page 57 first.

Only one window can be operated mechanically at any time.

Opening

Lift the crank in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 38.

Closing

Turn the crank in the direction of the arrow B » Fig. 38.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating the light function 58
Daytime running lights(DAY LIGHT) 59
Turn signal and main beam 60
Automatic driving lamp control 60
Fog lights 61
Fog lights with CORNER function 61
Rear fog light 61
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 62
Hazard warning light system 62
Parking light 63
Driving abroad 63

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

The arrangement of the controls right-hand drive models may differ from the layout shown in » Fig. 39 *on page 58*. The symbols which mark the individual positions of the controls are identical.

WARNING

- The activation of the lights should only be undertaken in accordance with national legal requirements.
- The driver is always responsible for the correct settings and use of the lights.

WARNING (Continued)

- The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the lights and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the prevailing light conditions. The light sensor cannot, for example, detect rain or snow. Under these conditions we recommend switching on the low beam or fog lights!
- Never drive with only the side lights on! The side lights are not bright enough to light up the road sufficiently in front of you or to be seen by other oncoming traffic. Therefore always switch on the low beam when it is dark or if visibility is poor.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the driving lights are switched on, the light outlet surfaces are free from mist after a short period, although the headlight lenses may still be misted up in the peripheral areas. This mist has no influence on the life of the lighting system.

Operating the light function

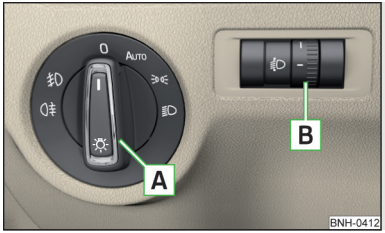


Fig. 39
Light switch and control dial for headlight range adjustment

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

Switching lights on and off

Depending on the equipment configuration, the light switch A» Fig. 39 can be moved to the following positions.

Turn switch

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)

AUTO Automatic switching lights on and off » page 60

Switching on the parking light or parking lights[1] » page 63

Switch on low beam[1]

Pull switch

Switch on the front fog lamp » page 61

Switching on the rear fog light » page 61

Headlight range control

Turning the dial B » Fig. 39 from the position ▬ in 3 means the headlight adjustment is gradually adjusted and thereby shortens the light cone.

The positions of the width of illumination correspond approximately to the following car load.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty
1 All seats occupied, boot empty
2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

We recommend you adjust the headlight beam when the low beam is switched on.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to meet the following conditions.
- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- An audible warning signal will sound if the light switch is in the or position, the ignition key is removed and the driver's door is opened. The audible warning signal is switched off after a few seconds or as a result of door contact when the driver's door is closed. However, the side lights remain on to illuminate the parked vehicle if necessary.
- **If leaving the vehicle without needing the parking lights on, always turn the light switch to position 0.**

[1] On vehicles with the instrument cluster - Version 1 » page 30 the symbol also illuminates on the light switch.

Daytime running lights(DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

The daytime running lights (the only function) provides the lighting of the front vehicle range.

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position 0 or AUTO » Fig. 39 *on page 58*.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The parking aid is activated.

Deactivating the function

› Switch off the ignition.
› Remove the fuse for the daytime running lights » page 173, *Fuses in the dash panel*.

Activating the function

› Switch off the ignition.
› Use a fuse of appropriate amperage for the daytime running lights » page 173, *Fuses in the dash panel*.

Disable function on vehicles with the START-STOP system or with the automatic driving light control

› Switch off the ignition.
› Slide the turn signal light lever (» Fig. 40 *on page 60*) downwards and hold it in this position.
› Switch on the ignition – wait until the left-turn signal light flashes 4x.
› Switch off the ignition – an audible signal sounds which confirms the deactivation of the function.
› Release the turn signal stalk.

Function on vehicles with the START-STOP system or with the automatic driving light control

› Switch off the ignition.
› Slide the turn signal light lever (» Fig. 40 *on page 60*) upwards and hold it in this position.
› Switch on the ignition – wait until the right-turn signal light flashes 4x.
› Switch off the ignition – an audible signal sounds which confirms the activation of the function.

› Release the turn signal stalk.

WARNING

When the daytime running light is switched on, the side lights (neither at the front nor the rear) and the number plate lights are not lit. Therefore always switch on the low beam when the visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

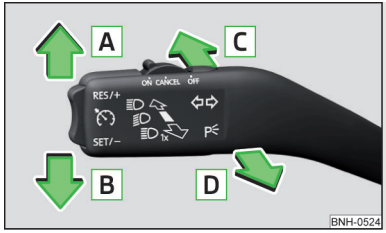


Fig. 40
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

Lever positions » Fig. 40

- **A** Switch on right turn signal
- **B** Switch on left turn signal
- **C** Switch on high beam (spring-loaded position)
- **D** Switching off main beam / switching on headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position)

Main beam
The main beam can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the headlight is switched on.

Flasher
The headlight flasher can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster when the headlight flasher is switched on.

Flashing
When the left flashing light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

When the right flashing light is switched on, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The turn signal light switches itself off automatically when driving around a curve or after making a turn.

The warning light flashes at twice its normal rate if a bulb for the turn signal light fails.

"Convenience turn signal"
If you only wish to flash three times, briefly push **the lever** to the upper or lower pressure point and **release again**.

WARNING

Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

Automatic driving lamp control



Fig. 41
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 41, the parking lights, low beam and number plate lights are switched on or off automatically.

The light on/off switching is controlled by a sensor mounted under the windscreen in the holder of the inside mirror.

If the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the lettering **AUTO** illuminates next to the light switch. If the light is switched on automatically, the symbol next to the light switch also illuminates.

Automatic driving light control during rain

The low beam is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

- ✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 41.
- ✓ Automatic wiping with rain - position 1 or wiping - position 2 or 3 is turned on » page 66, *Activating the windscreen wipers and washers*.
- ✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 15 s.

The light turns off about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

CAUTION

Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.

Fog lights

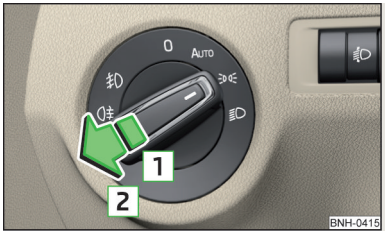


Fig. 42
Light switch - Switch front and rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

Switching on/off

› Turn the light switch to position or » Fig. 42.
› Pull the light switch to position 1.

The front fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The warning light » page 34 illuminates in the instrument cluster when the fog lights are switched on.

Fog lights with CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

The CORNER function lights the front fog lamp on each side of the vehicle to illuminate the area around the vehicle when turning, parking, etc.

The CORNER function **is switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.**

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply to the right or left[1].
- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ The vehicle is stopped or moves at a speed of no more than 40 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on or the light switch is in the position **AUTO** and the low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The daytime running lights are not switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

Note

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

Switching on/off

› Turn the light switch to position or » Fig. 42 *on page 61*.
› Pull the light switch to position 2.

The rear fog light is switched off in the reverse order.

The warning light » page 34 illuminates in the instrument cluster when the rear fog light is switched on.

If the vehicle is not fitted with fog lights, the rear fog light is switched on by pulling out the light switch directly to the only possible setting.

Only the rear fog light on the trailer illuminates if the vehicle has a factory-fitted towing device or a towing device from ŠKODA original accessories and it is driven with a trailer.

[1] If both switch-on conditions are conflicting, for example, if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on, the turn signal light has the higher priority.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

COMING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as a function) switches the light automatically for a short time after leaving the vehicle.

LEAVING HOME (hereinafter referred to only as a function) switches the light automatically for a short time when approaching the vehicle.

The function switches on the following light, depending on the equipment fitted.

› Parking lights
› Low beam
› Entry lighting in the exterior mirrors
› Licence plate light

Poorer visibility is evaluated by sensor mounted in the holder of the interior mirror.

COMING HOME

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 41 *on page 60*.
✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ The function was activated before leaving the vehicle by briefly switching on the headlight flasher » page 60, *Turn signal and main beam* .
✓ The driver's door was open - within 60 seconds after turning off the ignition.

The light **goes out** 10 seconds after closing all of the doors and the boot lid.

If a door or the boot lid remains open, the light **goes out** after 60 seconds.

LEAVING HOME

The lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 41 *on page 60*.
✓ The visibility in the vehicle environment is reduced.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ The vehicle was unlocked with the radio remote control.

The light **goes off** after 10 seconds or when locking the vehicle.

CAUTION

▪ Do not attach any stickers or similar objects in front of the light sensor on the windscreen to avoid impairing the function or its reliability.
▪ If this function is activated constantly, the battery will be heavily discharged particularly in short-haul travel.

Hazard warning light system

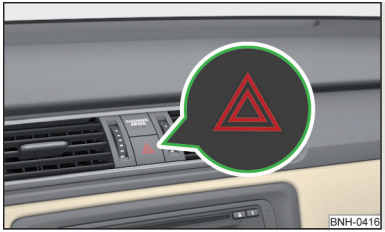


Fig. 43
Button for hazard warning light system

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

Switching on/off

› Press the button ⚠ » Fig. 43.

All the turn signal lights on the vehicle flash at the same time when the hazard warning light system is switched on. The warning light for the turn signals and the warning light in the button also flash at the same time. The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

If the turn signal light is switched on when the hazard warning light and the ignition are both switched on, then only the turn signal light on the corresponding vehicle side will flash.

WARNING

Switch on the hazard warning light system if, for example, the following occurs.
▪ You encounter a traffic congestion.
▪ The vehicle must may have to be parked on the roadside due to a fault.

Parking light

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

The parking light is provided for a temporary lighting of the parked vehicle.

Parking light P switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Place the control lever into position A or B as far as it can go » Fig. 40 *on page 60* - the parking light on the right/left-hand side of the vehicle is switched on.

If the right or left turn signal light has been switched on and the ignition is switched off, the parking light P is not automatically switched on.

Switching on the side light on both sides

› Turn the light switch A to position » Fig. 39 *on page 58* and lock the vehicle.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible alarm is turned off, but the parking lights will remain switched on.

On vehicles with an instrument cluster -version 1 » page 30 the light switch symbol also illuminates when the two-sided parking light is switched on.

CAUTION

Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded, especially over short distances.

Driving abroad

Read and observe ! on page 58 first.

The low beam is set asymmetrically. It illuminates the side of the road on which the vehicle is being driven to a greater extent.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), asymmetric headlight adjustment can dazzle oncoming traffic. In order to avoid this, the headlights must be adjusted at a specialist garage.

Note

You can find out more information on adjusting the headlights at a specialist garage.

Interior lighting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front interior light 63
Rear interior light 64

Note

With the ignition off, the light turns off automatically after about 10 minutes.

Front interior light

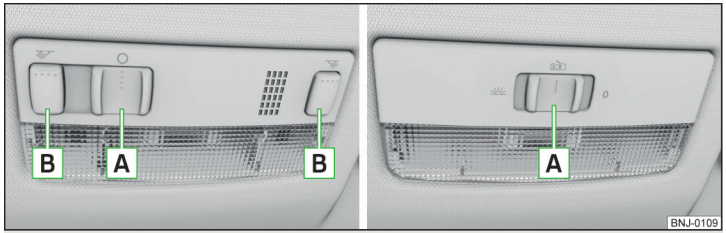


Fig. 44 **Operation of the front light: Version 1/version 2**

Positions of the sliding light switch A » Fig. 44

Switching on
0 Switching off
Operating with the door contact switch

Switch for reading light B » Fig. 44

Switching left reading lamp on/off
Switching right reading lamp on/off

Conditions for operation of light with the door contact switch - setting

The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.

› The vehicle is unlocked.
› One of the doors is opened.
› The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.
› The vehicle is locked.
› The ignition is switched on.
› About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Rear interior light



Fig. 45 **Interior lights at the rear: Version 1/version 2**

Rear light - version 1: press switch A » Fig. 45

Switching on/off

Rear light - version 2: move lens B » Fig. 45

Switching on

0 Switching off

Operating with the door contact switch[1)]

Rear light - version 1

The rear light is operated together with the front light [2)].

› When the front lighting is **switched on**, the rear lighting also turns on automatically.
› When the front lighting is **switched off**, the rear lighting can be turned on/off as required.

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Rear window heater 64
Front sun visors 65
Sun screen of the panoramic roof 65

Rear window heater



Fig. 46
Dash panel: Button for rear window heater

The heating for quick defrosting and ventilation of the rear window.

Button in the centre console » Fig. 46

Switching the rear window heater on/off

When the heater is switched on, a lamp illuminates inside the button.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

The heater automatically switches off after approximately 7 minutes.

For the sake of the environment

The heating should be switched off as soon as the window is de-iced or free from mist. The reduced current consumption will have a favourable effect on fuel economy.

[1)] In this position, apply the same rules to the rear interior light as for the front interior light » page 63.
[2)] This function only applies to certain countries. In some countries, the light at the rear is controlled independently from the light at the front.

Note

- If the on-board voltage drops, the heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 151, *Automatic load deactivation*.
- If the light is flashing inside the button the heater is off due to low battery.

Front sun visors

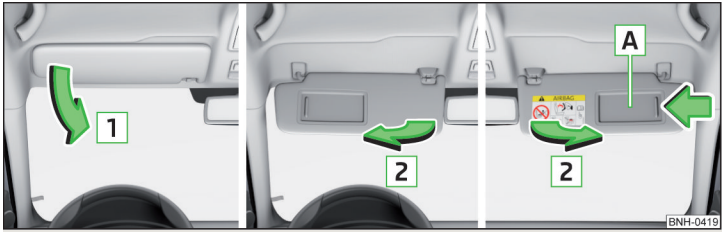


Fig. 47 **Fold down the cover / swivel cover to the door and slide the mirror cover**

The sun visors protect you from the blazing sun.

Operation and description of the sun visor » Fig. 47

1 Fold down the cover
2 Swivel cover towards the door
A Make-up mirror with cover
B Slide mirror cover

WARNING

The sun visors must not be swivelled towards the side windows in the deployment area of the head airbags if any objects are attached to them. Initiation of the head airbags may cause injury.

Sun screen of the panoramic roof



Fig. 48
Open sun screen

The sunshade protects against the blazing sun.

The sunshade of the panoramic roof can be **opened** manually in the direction of arrow or **closed** in the opposite direction of the arrow » Fig. 48.

WARNING

When operating the sun blind, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – risk of injury!

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Activating the windscreen wipers and washers 66
Headlight cleaning system 67

The wiper and washer system provide a good view through the windscreen or rear window.

The windshield wipers and the windshield washer system only operate if the ignition is switched on.

Top up with windscreen wiper fluid » page 143.

WARNING

- Properly maintained windscreen wiper blades are essential for clear visibility and safe driving » page 172.
- Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.
- Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

CAUTION

- If the ignition is switched off while the windscreen wipers are switched on, the windscreen wipers will continue wiping in the same mode after the ignition is turned back on. The windscreen wipers could freeze up in cold temperatures between the time the ignition was turned off and when it was turned back on again.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before the journey or before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully peel frozen wiper blades off the windscreen.
- Remove snow and ice from the windscreen wipers before driving.
- Do not switch on the ignition if the front wiper arms are retracted. The wiper arms could damage the paint of the bonnet.
- If the windscreen wipers are handled carelessly, there is a risk of damage to the windscreen.

Note

- To avoid streaking, the wiper blades must be kept clean » page 136.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than approx. +10 °C.

Activating the windscreen wipers and washers

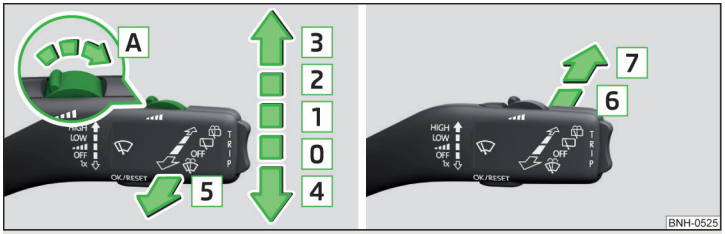


Fig. 49 **Operation of the wipers and washer: front and rear**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

Lever positions

0	OFF	Wipers off
1	..ıı	Periodic windscreen wiping/automatic wiping in rain
2	LOW	Slow windscreen wiping
3	HIGH	Rapid windscreen wiping
4	1x	Flick windscreen wiping, service position of the wiper arms » page 172, (spring-loaded position)
5		Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen (spring-tensioned position)
6		Wiping the rear window pane (the windscreen wiper wipes at regular intervals after a few seconds)
7		Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window (spring-tensioned position)
A	..ıı	Switches for setting: the desired pause between the individual wiper strokes / the speed of the wiping in rain (operating lever in the position 1)

Interval windscreen wiping ..ıı
The wiping intervals are also speed-dependent regulated.

Automatic windscreen wiping in rain ..ıı
The wiping intervals are controlled depending on the rain intensity.

Automatic wipe/wash for windscreen
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wipers wipe somewhat later.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wipers to continue for another 1 to 3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration).

Automatic wipe/wash for the rear window
The wash system operates immediately, the windscreen wiper wipes somewhat later.

Letting go of the operating lever will cause the windscreen wash system to stop and the wiper to continue for another 1 to 3 wiper strokes (depending on the spraying duration). **The operating lever remains in position 6**.

Note
The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

After the ignition is switched on, the headlights are always cleaned at the first and after every tenth spray of the windscreen (setting 5 » Fig. 49 *on page 66*), when the low beam or main beam is switched on.

You should remove stubborn dirt (such as insect residues) from the headlight lenses at regular intervals, for example when refuelling. The following guidelines must be observed » page 134, *Headlight glasses*.

To ensure the proper operation of the cleaning system during the winter, any snow should be removed from the washer nozzle fixtures and ice should be cleared with a de-icing spray.

CAUTION
Never remove the nozzles from the headlight cleaning system by hand – risk of damage!

Rear mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror ____ 67
Exterior mirror ____ 68

WARNING
- Make sure that the mirror is not covered by ice, snow, mist or other objects.
- Convex (curved outward) or aspheric exterior mirrors increase the field of vision. They do, however, make objects appear smaller in the mirror. These mirrors are therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to the following vehicles.
- Whenever possible use the interior mirror for estimating the distances to the following vehicles.

Interior mirror

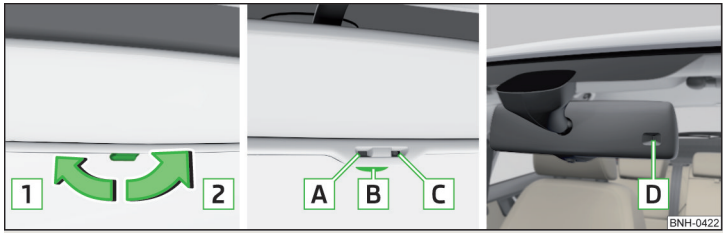


Fig. 50 **Interior mirror: manual dimming / auto-dimming / light sensor**

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 50
1 Basic position of the mirror
2 Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming » Fig. 50
A Warning light - lights when dimming is activated
B Switch for the activation of the automatic mirror dimming
C Light sensor
D Light sensor on the back of the mirror

Mirror with automatic dimming
If the automatic dimming is enabled, the mirror dims automatically depending on the light falling on the sensors.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror always moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

Do not attach external navigation devices on to the windscreen or in the vicinity of the automatic dimming interior mirror » !.

! WARNING

The illuminated display of an external navigation unit can lead to operational faults to the automatic dimming interior mirror – risk of accident.

! WARNING

The mirrors with automatic dimming contain an electrolyte liquid which can escape if mirror glass is broken.

- The leaking electrolytic fluid can irritate the skin, eyes and breath apparatus. Immediately seek out fresh air and leave the vehicle. If this is not possible, at least open the window.
- If you swallow electrolytic fluid, seek medical assistance immediately.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Then consult a doctor immediately.

! CAUTION

Automatic mirror dimming operates only properly if the light striking the sensors is not affected by other objects.

Exterior mirror

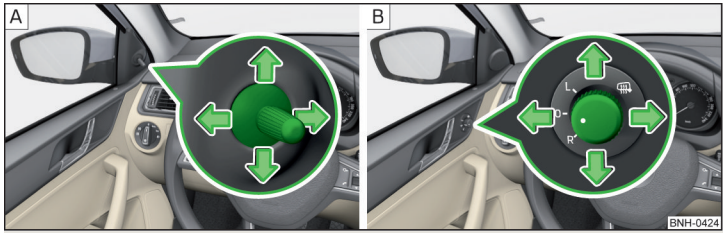


Fig. 51 **Exterior mirror operation: mechanical / electrical**

Read and observe ! on page 67 first.

Adjust the position

The mirror can be adjusted to the desired position by moving the knob in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 51.

The movement of the mirror surface is identical to the movement of the rotary knob.

Electrically-adjustable mirrors

The knob can be moved into the following positions » Fig. 51 - B.

- L Adjust the left mirror
- R Adjust the right mirror
- 0 Switch off mirror control
- Mirror heater

Folding in the exterior mirrors

The whole exterior mirror can be manually folded towards the side windows. To put it back into its original position, it should be folded back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

! WARNING

Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

i Note

- The mirror heater only operates when the engine is running and up to an outside temperature of +35 °C.
- If the electrical mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

Seats and head restraints

Seats and head restraints

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting the front seats 69
Head restraints - adjusting height 70
Headrests - removing and installing 70

The driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the pedals can be fully pressed to the floor with slightly bent legs.

The seat backrest on the driver's seat should be adjusted in such a way that the upper point of the steering wheel can be easily reached with slightly bent arms.

Correct adjustment of the seats is particularly important for the following reasons.

› Reaching the controls safely and quickly.
› A relaxed and fatigue-free body position.
› **Achieving the maximum protection offered by the seat belts and the airbag system.**

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.
- Never carry more people than the number of seats in the vehicle.
- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat, except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) – risk of accident!

Note

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Adjusting the front seats

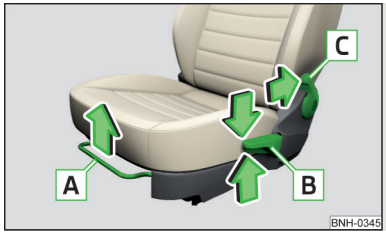


Fig. 52
Control elements at the seat

Read and observe ! on page 69 first.

Control elements at the seat » Fig. 52

A Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction
B Adjusting height of seat
C Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

Adjusting a seat in a forward/back direction

› Pull lever A » Fig. 52(in the centre) in the direction of arrow and push the seat in the required direction.

The lock must click into place after you release the lever.

Adjusting height of seat

› Again push or pull the lever B » Fig. 52 in the direction of one of the arrows.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest

› The seat back release (do not lean on).
› Pull the lever C » Fig. 52 in direction of arrow and with your back set the desired inclination of the seat back.

After releasing the lever the seat backrest will remain in the set position.

Head restraints - adjusting height



Fig. 53 **Head rests: move up / move down**

Read and observe ! on page 69 first.

Adjustment of the head rest heights is the same in the front and rear.

Best protection is achieved if the top edge of the head rest is at the same level as the upper part of your head.

Move upwards

› Push the headrest in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 53.

Move downwards

› Press the locking button A in the direction of the arrow 2 and hold » Fig. 53.
› Push the headrest in the direction of arrow 3 .

! WARNING

With seats occupied, the respective head rests must be correctly set (may not be in the bottom position) - there is a risk of fatal injury!

i Note

For the sports seats, the head restraints are integrated into the front seat backrests. This headrest cannot be adjusted in height.

Headrests - removing and installing

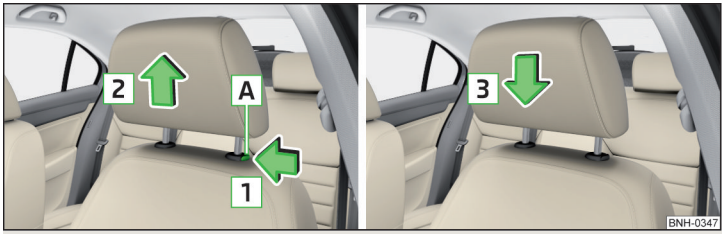


Fig. 54 **Front head rests: removal / installation**

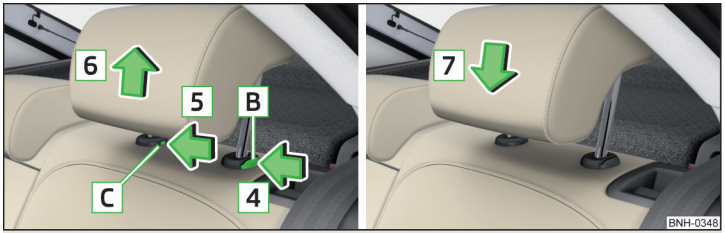


Fig. 55 **Rear headrests: removal / installation**

Read and observe ! on page 69 first.

Front restraint

› Pull the restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button A in the direction of arrow 1. and pull the support in the direction of arrow 2.
› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down in the direction of arrow 3 into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

Rear restraint

› Pull the restraint out of the seat backrest as far as the stop.
› Press the locking button B in the direction of arrow 4, while at the same time using a flat screwdriver with a max. width of 5 mm to press the securing button in opening C in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the restraint in the direction of arrow 6.

› To re-insert the head restraint, push it far enough down in the direction of arrow 7 into the seat backrest until the locking button clicks into place.

WARNING

With seats occupied, the respective head rests must be installed and adjusted correctly - there is a risk of fatal injury!

Note

For the sports seats, the head restraints are integrated into the front seat backrests. These headrests cannot be removed.

Seat features

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front seat heating 71
Front armrest 72
Rear armrest 72
Seat backrests 72

Front seat heating



Fig. 56
Buttons for heating the front seats

The seat backrests and seats can be heated electrically.

The seat heating can only be switched on when the engine is running.

Buttons for the seat heater » Fig. 56

- Left seat heating
- Right seat heating

Switching on

› Press the corresponding symbol button or » Fig. 56.

Pressing once switches the seat heating on at its maximum level - Level 2.

With repeated pressing of the switch, the intensity of the heating is reduced until it is switched off.

The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

WARNING

If, as an occupant, you have a subdued pain and/or temperature sensitivity, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend you do not use seat heating on the driver or front passenger seat. This can lead to burns on the back, the posterior and the legs which are difficult to heal. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- The seat heating in the following cases will not turn on - there is a risk of damaging the seat covers and seat heating.
  - The seats are not occupied by people.
  - Items are fastened or stored items on the seats, such as a child seat, a bag and the like.
  - Additional seat covers or protective covers are fixed to the seats.
- Clean the seat covers » page 138.

Note

- If the seat heaters are set to their highest intensity - level 2, they are automatically switched down to level 1 after 15 minutes.
- If the on-board voltage drops, the seat heater switches off automatically, in order to provide sufficient electrical energy for the engine control » page 151, *Automatic load deactivation*.

Front armrest



Fig. 57
Adjusting armrest

Setting the height

› Lift the armrest fully upwards in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 57 and then move it back down completely.
› Move the armrest into one of the 5 locking positions.

The armrest includes a storage compartment » page 78.

Rear armrest

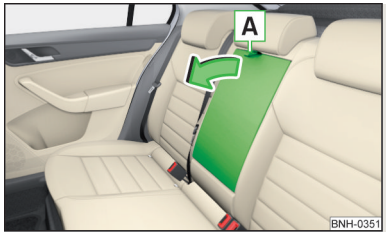


Fig. 58
Fold the armrest forward

Folding forward

› Pull on the loop A and fold the armrest forward in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 58.

A cup holder may be located in the armrest » page 74.

Seat backrests

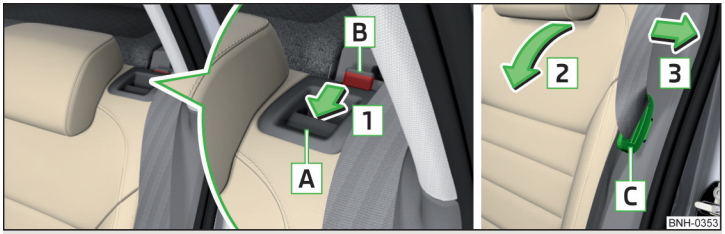


Fig. 59 **Fold seat backrest forwards / pull seat belt to the side panel and ready position of the seat belt**

The luggage compartment can be increased in size by folding the seat backrests forward. The seat backrests can also be folded forward individually on vehicles with divided rear seats.

Before folding the seat backrests forwards, adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded seat backrests.

If the front seats are too far back, we recommend that you have the rear head restraints removed before the seat backrests are folded forward » !.

Fold down split seat backrest

› Insert the belt buckle latching element C of the seat belt into the opening in the side panel - ready position » Fig. 59.
› Press the release lever A in the direction of arrow 1.
› Remove the backrest in the direction of the arrow 2.

Fold down undivided seat backrest

› Insert the belt buckle latching elements C of the outer belts into the openings in the side panel - ready position » Fig. 59.
› Push the release handles A on both sides of the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 1 simultaneously.
› Remove the backrest in the direction of the arrow 2.

Fold back split seat backrest

› If you removed the head restraint, you need to reinsert it with the backrest tilted slightly forwards.
› Pull the rear outer seat belt to the side panel in the direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 59.

› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the securing knob A clicks into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » !.
› Make sure that the red pin B is hidden.

Fold back undivided seat backrest

› If you removed the head restraints, you need to reinsert them with the backrest tilted slightly forwards.
› Insert the belt buckle latching elements C of the outer belts into the openings in the side panel - ready position » Fig. 59.
› Then push the seat backrest back into the upright position until the release levers A on either side of the seat back click into place – check by pulling on the seat backrest » !.
› Make sure that the red pins B on both sides of the seat back are not visible.

! WARNING

- The seat belts and the belt locks must be in their original position after folding back the seat backrests – they must be ready to use.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – risk of injury.
- In occupied rear seats make sure that the respective seat backrests are properly engaged.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the seat belts are not damaged when operating the seat backrests. Under no circumstances must the seat belts be jammed by the folded back seat backrests.
- Store the head restraints that were removed in such a way that they are not damaged or soiled.

Transporting and practical equipment

Useful equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car park ticket holder 74
stowage compartments in the doors 74
Storage compartment in the centre console 74
Cup holders 74
Cigarette lighter 75
Ashtray 76
12-Volt power outlet 76
Waste container 77
Multimedia holder 77
Storage compartment in the front arm rest 78
Glasses compartment 78
Storage compartment on the front passenger side 78
Clothes hook 79
Storage pockets on the front seats 79
Net pockets on the front seat rest 80

! WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dash panel. These objects might slide or fall down when driving (when accelerating or cornering) and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – there is the risk of an accident!
- When driving, ensure that no objects from the centre console or from other storage compartments can get into the driver's footwell. You would not be able to brake, operate the clutch pedal or accelerate - danger of causing an accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like. may only be placed in the ashtray!

Car park ticket holder



Fig. 60
Parking ticket holder

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

The parking permitted holder » Fig. 60 is designed e.g. for attaching car parking tickets.

! WARNING

The attached note has to always be **removed** before starting off in order not to restrict the driver's vision.

stowage compartments in the doors

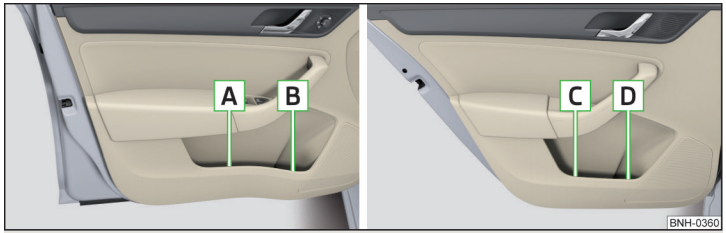


Fig. 61 **Storage compartment: in the front door / in the rear door**

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 61

A Storage compartment in the front doors
B Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 litres in the front doors
C Storage compartment in the rear doors
D Bottle compartment, max. capacity 0.5 l in the rear doors

! WARNING

Do not use the storage compartment A » Fig. 61 of the door pocket to store projecting objects. These could impair the effectiveness of the side airbag.

Storage compartment in the centre console



Fig. 62 **Non-lockable compartment, front / rear**

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

Non-lockable compartment » Fig. 62

A In the front centre console
B In the rear centre console

Cup holders



Fig. 63 **Cup holder at the front/rear**

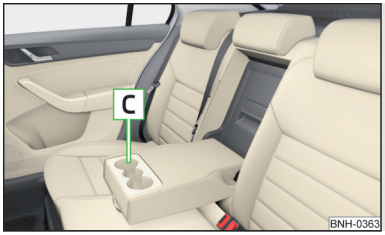


Fig. 64
Cup holder in rear armrest

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

Two beverage containers can be placed into the cup holder.

Placement of the cup holders » Fig. 63 and » Fig. 64

A In the front centre console
B In the rear centre console
C In the rear armrest

! WARNING

- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot cups in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – risk of scalding!
- No objects should be placed in the holders that might endanger the vehicle's occupants if the vehicle brakes suddenly or the vehicle is in collision.

! CAUTION

Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holder during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 65
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

Using the system

› Press in the button in the cigarette lighter » Fig. 65.
› Wait until the button pops forward.
› Remove the cigarette lighter immediately and use.
› Place the cigarette lighter back into the socket.

The cigarette lighter also operates if the ignition is switched off » !.

! WARNING

- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These could operate the lighter and get burned, start a fire or damage the interior.
- Take care when using the cigarette lighter! Improper usage can cause burns.

i Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12- volt socket for electrical appliances » page 76, *12-Volt power outlet*.

Ashtray



Fig. 66 **Remove front / rear ashtray**

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

The ashtray can be used for discarding ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like » !.

Removing

› Pull out the ashtray in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 66.

Fitting

› Push-in the ashtray against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 66.

! WARNING

Never place flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

! CAUTION

When removing, do not hold the ashtray at the cover – risk of breakage.

12-Volt power outlet

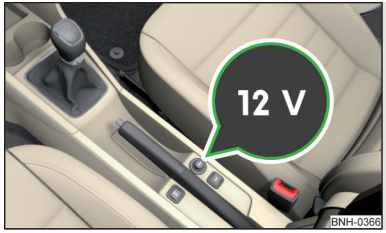


Fig. 67
12-Volt power socket

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

Use

› Remove the socket cover or the cigarette lighter » Fig. 67.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

The socket also operates if the ignition is switched off .» !

! WARNING

- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.
- If the connected electric device becomes too hot, switch it off and disconnect it from the power supply immediately.

! CAUTION

- The power socket can only be used for connecting approved electrical accessories with a total power uptake of up to 120 watt.
- Never exceed the maximum power consumption, otherwise the vehicle's electrical system can be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Only use matching plugs to avoid damaging the power socket.
- Only use accessories that have been tested for electromagnetic compatibility in accordance with the applicable directives.
- Switch off the devices connected to the power sockets before you switch the ignition on or off and before starting the engine, to avoid damage from voltage fluctuations.
- Observe the operating instructions for the connected devices!

Waste container

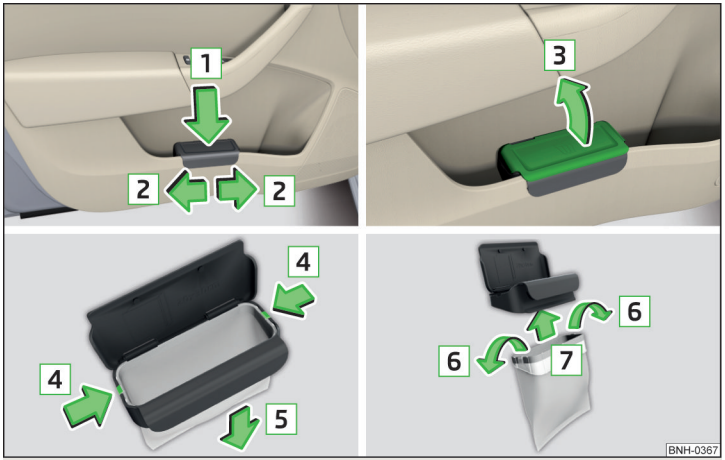


Fig. 68 **Waste container: insert and move / open / replace bag**

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slots in the doors » page 74.

Insert waste container
› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 68.
› Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow 2.

Remove the waste container
› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 » Fig. 68.

Open/close waste container
› Open the waste container in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 68.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags
› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Push the two catches of the inner frame out of the container body in the direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 68.
› Pull the bag together with the inner frame down in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the bag from the inside frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow 6.
› Insert the bag with the frame in the direction of arrow 7 into the container body.

The two catches of the inner frame must click into place.

! WARNING
Never use the waste container as an ashtray - risk of fire!

i Note
We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder



Fig. 69
Multimedia holder

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

You can use this multimedia holder» Fig. 69 to store e.g. a mobile phone, MP3 player or similar devices.

! WARNING
Never use the multimedia holder as an ashtray - risk of fire!

Storage compartment in the front arm rest



Fig. 70 **Storage compartment / open storage compartment**

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

Opening

› Grasp the armrests in the area A » Fig. 70.
› Lift the lid of the storage box in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Fold the lid of the storage box back in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 70, until it audibly clicks into place.

! WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Glasses compartment

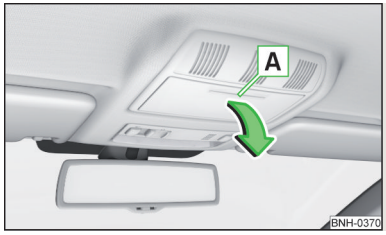


Fig. 71
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

Opening

› Press on the lid of the glasses storage box in area A » Fig. 71.

The box folds in the direction of the arrow.

Closing

› Swivel the lid of the glasses storage box against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 71 until it audibly clicks into place.

! WARNING

- The compartment must only be opened when removing or inserting the spectacles and otherwise must be kept closed – risk of injury.
- The open compartment restricts the driver's view - there is a danger of accidents!

! CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the glasses compartment is 250 g.
- Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box – they may be damaged.
- The compartment must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system!

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

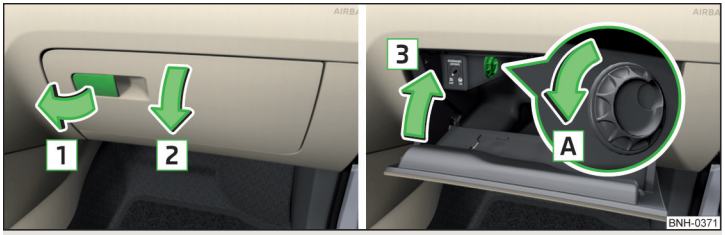


Fig. 72 **Open storage compartment / close storage compartment and open air supply**

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

Opening

› Pull the handle to position 1 » Fig. 72 in the direction of the arrow.

› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

Closing

› Screw in the filler cap in the direction of arrow 3 until it audibly clicks into place » Fig. 72.

Air supply into the storage compartment

› By turning the rotary switch in the direction of arrow A until it stops, the air supply is **opened** » Fig. 72.
› By turning the rotary switch opposite direction of arrow A until it stops the air supply **is closed**.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched off allows non-cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

Opening the air supply when the air conditioning system is switched on allows cooled air to flow into the storage compartment.

WARNING

The storage compartment must always be closed when driving for safety reasons.

Note

- A 1 litre bottle (max. capacity) can be stored in the storage compartment on the front passenger's side.
- When the storage compartment is opened, a light illuminates.
- If the cooling of the storage compartment is not used, we recommend that you leave the air supply closed.

Clothes hook

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors.

WARNING

- Only hang light items of clothing on the hooks. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing.
- Do not use clothes hangers for hanging up items of clothing; this may reduce the effectiveness of the head airbags.
- Ensure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impair your vision to the rear.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hooks is 2 kg.

Storage pockets on the front seats



Fig. 73
Map pockets

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

The storage pockets » Fig. 73 are intended for the storage of maps, magazines, etc.

WARNING

Never put heavy items into the map pockets – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Never put large objects into the map pockets, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges - risk of damaging the pockets and seat coverings.

Net pockets on the front seat rest



Fig. 74
Meshed pocket

Read and observe ! on page 73 first.

The net pockets are used for storage of small and light objects, such as mobile phones and the like.

The net pockets are located on the inner sides of the front seat backrests » Fig. 74.

! WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the meshed pockets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the meshed pockets is 150 g.
- Never put large objects, e.g. bottles or objects with sharp edges into the mesh pockets - risk of damaging the mesh pockets and seat coverings.

Luggage compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fastening elements 81
Fixing nets 81
Hooks 82
Luggage compartment cover 82
"Parking position" of the boot cover 83
Storage compartment in the boot 83
Flexible storage compartment 84
Storage net bag 84
Cargo elements 84
Double-sided floor covering 85
Class N1 vehicles 85

Please observe the following for the purpose of maintaining good handling characteristics of your vehicle:

› Distribute loads as evenly as possible.
› Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
› Attach the items of luggage to the lashing eyes or by using the fixing nets » page 81.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

Example: In the event of a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h, an object with a weight of 4.5 kg produces an energy, which corresponds to 20 times its own weight. This means that it results in a weight of approx. 90 kg " ".

Luggage compartment light

The warning light turns on when tailgate is opened.

The warning light turns off when the tailgate is closed.

If the boot lid is open and the ignition switched off, the light will extinguish automatically after around 10 minutes.

! WARNING

- Always store transported objects in the boot and attach them to the lashing eyes.
- Loose objects can be thrown forward during a sudden manoeuvre or in case of an accident and can injure the occupants or other road users.
- Loose objects could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- Please note that transporting heavy objects alters the handling properties of the vehicle due to the displacement of the centre of gravity – risk of accident! The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.

WARNING (Continued)

- If the items of luggage or objects are attached to the lashing eyes with unsuitable or damaged lashing straps, injuries can occur in the event of braking manoeuvres or accidents. To prevent items of luggage from moving around, always use suitable lashing straps that are firmly attached to the lashing eyes.
- The transported items must be stowed in such a way that no objects are able to slip forward on sudden driving or braking manoeuvres – risk of injury!
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the rear seats forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats » page 11, *Correct seated position for the passengers in the rear seats*.
- If the rear seat next to the folded forward seat is occupied, ensure maximum safety, e.g. by placing the goods to be transported in such a way that the seat is prevented from folding back in case of a rear collision.
- Do not drive with the luggage compartment lid open or unlatched, otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – risk of accident!
- Do not transport people in the boot!

CAUTION

- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.
- Tyre pressure must be adjusted to the load » page 153.

Fastening elements

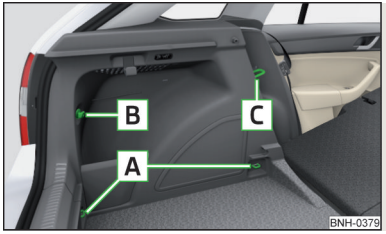


Fig. 75
Fasteners

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

Overview of the fasteners » Fig. 75

A Lashing eyelets for fastening items of luggage and fixing nets
B Fastening element **only** for fastening fixing nets
C Lashing eyes **only** for fastening fixing nets

The upper front lashing eye C is located behind the folding rear seat backrest.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible static load of the individual lashing eyes A is 3.5 kN (350 kg).

Fixing nets

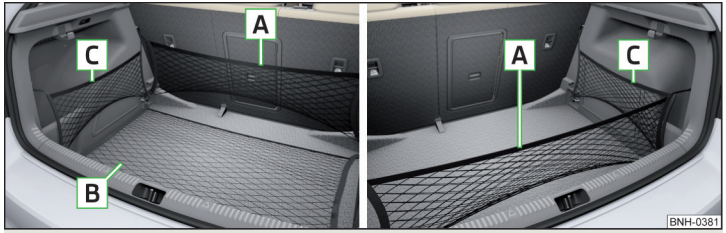


Fig. 76 **Fastening examples for nets**

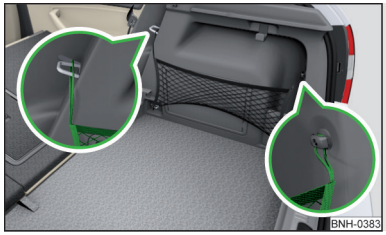


Fig. 77
Fastening vertical pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 76

A Horizontal pocket
B Floor net
C Vertical pocket

! WARNING

Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of the fixing nets. Heavy objects are not secured sufficiently – risk of injury!

! CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the fixing nets is 1.5 kg.
- Do not place any sharp objects in the nets – risk of net damage.

Hooks



Fig. 78
Hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

The hook is used to affix small items of luggage such as bags.

The hooks are located on both sides of the luggage compartment » Fig. 78.

! CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the hook is 7.5 kg.

Luggage compartment cover

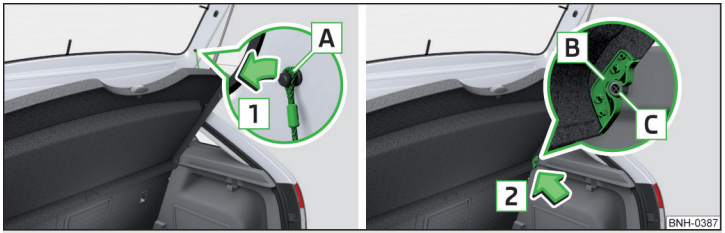


Fig. 79 **Removing the boot cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

The boot cover can be removed if you want to transport bulky goods.

Removing

› Unhook the retaining straps A from the flap in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 79.
› Hold the cover in the upper position and press the bottom of the cover in the area of the pin C.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.

The dismantled luggage compartment cover can be stowed away behind the rear seat backrest in the so called "parking position" » page 83.

Installing

› Place the cover on the contact surfaces of the side trim panel.
› Position the mounts on the cover B onto the side trim panel via pins C » Fig. 79.
› Press on the upper side of the cover so that the mounts fully interlock into the pins.
› Insert the retaining bands A opposite to the direction of arrow 1 on the boot lid.

WARNING

No objects may be placed on the boot cover, the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.

CAUTION

- The maximum permissible load of the luggage compartment cover is 1 kg.
- When closing the boot lid, jamming and damage to the luggage compartment cover or the side trim panel can occur if handled in an unprofessional way. The following guidelines must be observed.
  - The holders B on the cover must be resting completely on the pins C on the side panel » Fig. 79.
  - The items which are transported must not exceed the height of the luggage compartment cover in the lower position.
  - The cover must not be jammed in the surrounding seal of the luggage compartment lid when it is in the upper position.
  - There must be no object in the gap between the cover in the upper position and the rear backrest.
- After removing the luggage compartment cover, store it in such a way that it cannot be damaged or soiled.

Note

If the support straps A » Fig. 79 are attached to the boot, then the boot cover will raise when the boot is opened.

"Parking position" of the boot cover

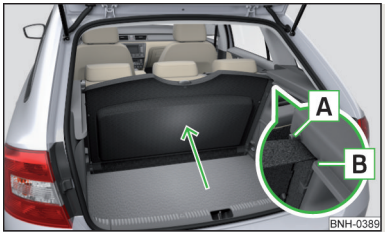


Fig. 80
Parking position of the luggage compartment cover

Read and observe and on page 80 first.

The boot cover can be stowed behind the seat backrest.

Adjusting

› Slide the dismantled cover between bolt A and contact surface B of the side panel » Fig. 80.

WARNING

When adjusting the "parking position", the boot cover must be between the bolt A and the rear seat backrest - risk of damaging the rear seat backrest and the boot cover.

CAUTION

- Before setting the "parking position" of the luggage compartment cover, the variable loading floor must be put in the upper or lower position» page 85.
- If the luggage compartment cover is in the "parking position", the "parking position" of the variable loading floor cannot be set » page 87.

Storage compartment in the boot

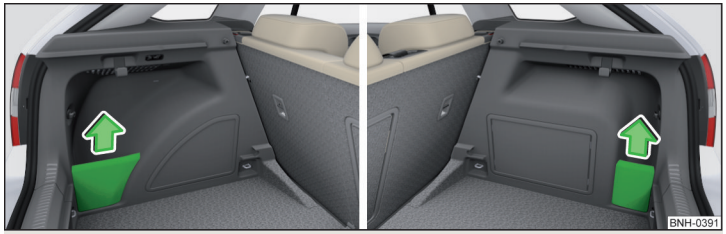


Fig. 81 **Remove the tray cover on the left / right**

Read and observe and on page 80 first.

The side compartment covers can be removed to increase the size of the luggage compartment.

Removing/Inserting

› Grasp the top part of the cover and remove it in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 81.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

CAUTION

- The storage compartments are designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight in total.
- When using the storage compartment, take care not to damage it or the luggage compartment lining.

Flexible storage compartment



Fig. 82
Flexible storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

The flexible storage compartment can be installed on the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 82.

Installing

› Place both ends of the storage compartment into the openings on the right side panel of the luggage compartment.
› Push the storage compartment down to lock it.

Removing

› Grasp the storage compartment on the two upper corners.
› Remove the storage compartment by pulling upwards and then towards you.

CAUTION

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

Note

The flexible storage compartment cannot be installed on vehicles with the variable loading floor » page 85.

Storage net bag

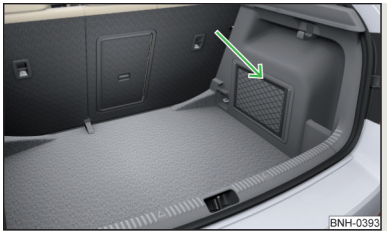


Fig. 83
Meshed pocket for storage

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

The meshed pocket for storage is located on the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 83.

CAUTION

The meshed pocket for storage is designed for storing small objects of up to 1.5 kg. in weight in total.

Cargo elements

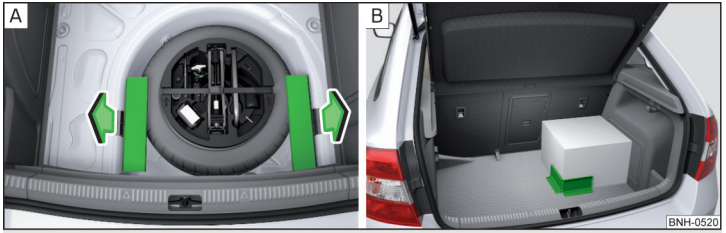


Fig. 84 **Removing cargo elements / example on how to mount the load by means of the cargo element**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 80 first.

The Cargo elements can be used for mounting and securing of the load from slipping in the boot.

The Cargo elements can be stored under the floor in the boot.

Secure load

› Remove the cargo elements in direction of arrow » Fig. 84 - A.
› Secure the cargo element with Velcro on the floor covering of the luggage compartment » Fig. 84 - B.

CAUTION

The cargo elements are designed for attaching loads with a maximum gross weight of 8 kg.

Double-sided floor covering

Read and observe and on page 80 first.

You can fit a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment.

One side of the double-sided floor covering is made of fabric, the other side is washable (easy to maintain).

The washable side is used to transport wet or dirty items.

Note

For easier turning of the covering, use the loop attached.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe and on page 80 first.

In class N1 vehicles that are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set that complies with the EN 12195 standard (1 - 4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Setting in the upper position 85
Setting in the lower position 86
Removing/inserting 86
Folding up/down 87
"Parking position" 87

The variable loading floor can be set to the upper or lower position.

For easier handling of the spare tire, for example, the variable loading floor can be set to two positions » page 87, *Folding up/down* and » page 87, *"Parking position"*.

CAUTION

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg. For the transport of heavy loads, adjust the variable loading floor to the lower position or remove it from the vehicle.

Setting in the upper position

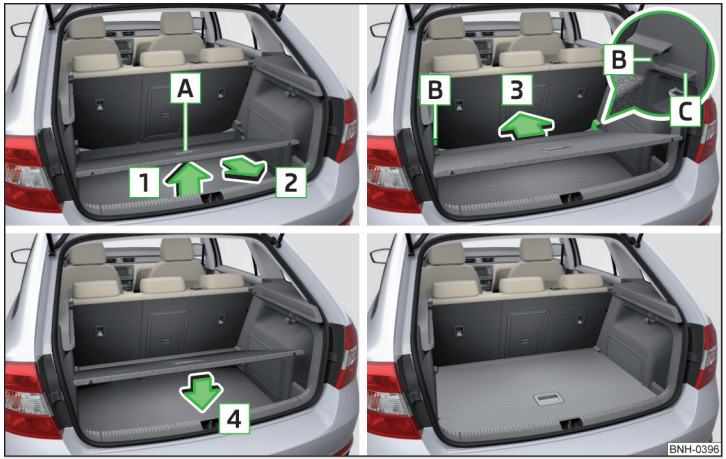


Fig. 85 **Set the variable loading floor to the upper position**

Read and observe on page 85 first.

The variable loading floor in the lower position can be set to the upper position as follows.

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 85.

› Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 1 and move partially backwards in the direction of arrow 2.
› Lift the variable loading floor at the front, place onto corner C and slide in the direction of arrow 3 until it clicks into place in brackets B.
› Place the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 4.

CAUTION

The variable loading floor cannot be set in the upper position when the luggage compartment cover is in the "park position" » page 83.

Note

When in the upper position there is space for storing items underneath the variable loading floor.

Setting in the lower position

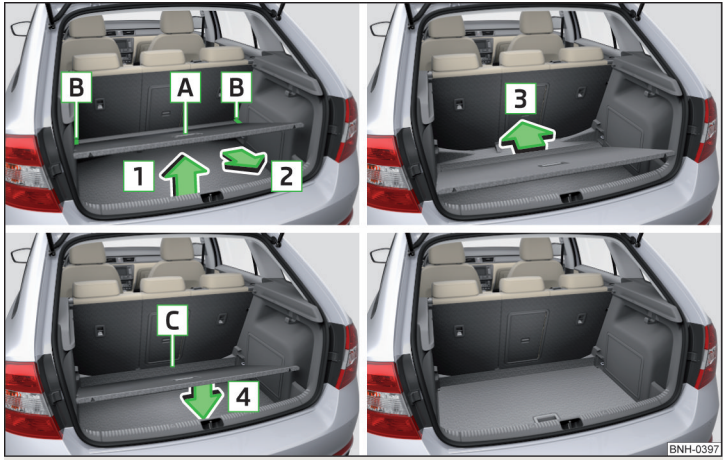


Fig. 86 **Set the variable loading floor to the lower position**

Read and observe ! on page 85 first.

The variable loading floor in the upper position can be set to the lower position as follows.

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 86.
› Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 1 and partially move in the direction of arrow 2 until it detaches from brackets B.
› Place the variable loading floor onto the floor covering of the luggage compartment while tilted forward.
› Push the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 3 as far as it will go, and until its front part C is raised.
› Place the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 4.

CAUTION

The variable loading floor cannot be set in the lower position when the luggage compartment cover is in the "park position" » page 83.

Removing/inserting

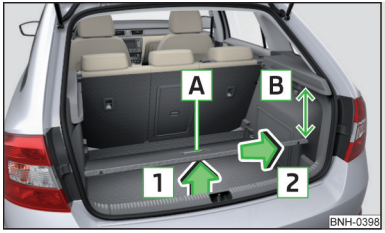


Fig. 87
Remove variable loading floor

Read and observe ! on page 85 first.

Removing

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 87.
› Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 1 until its rear area is about 15 cm B below the luggage compartment cover » !.
› Remove the variable loading floor from the vehicle by moving it in the direction of arrow 2.

Inserting

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 87.
› Insert variable loading floor into the vehicle with the front portion tilted about 15 cm B beneath the luggage compartment cover» !.
› Then follow the same steps as when setting the upper position » page 85 or the lower position » page 86 .

CAUTION

- When removing or inserting the variable loading floor, a distance of 15 cm B » Fig. 87 underneath the boot cover must be adhered to - risk of damaging the boot lid seal.
- The variable loading floor cannot be placed in the vehicle when the luggage compartment cover is in the "park position" » page 83.

Note

After removing the variable cargo floor, place it down in such a way that it cannot be damaged or soiled.

Folding up/down

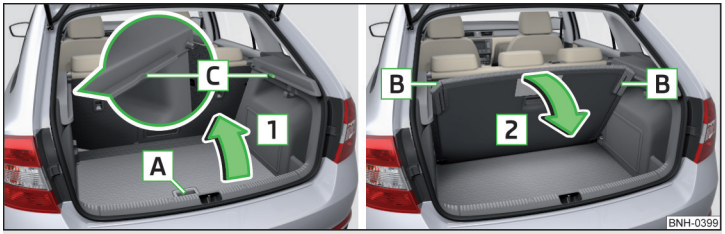


Fig. 88 **Fold up/fold down variable loading floor**

Read and observe ! on page 85 first.

The variable loading floor can be folded up in both positions (upper and lower).

Folding up

› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 88.
› Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of the arrow 1 until the folding corners B lock into place in area C.

Folding down

› Grasp the variable loading floor in the middle or at handle A » Fig. 88.
› Unlock the variable loading floor by pulling it in the direction of the arrow 2.

"Parking position"

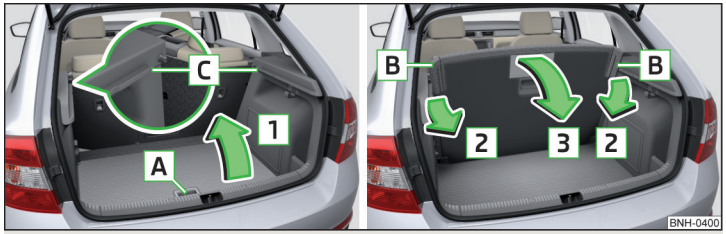


Fig. 89 **Set parking position / fold down from the parking position**

Read and observe ! on page 85 first.

The variable loading floor can only be in set to the "parking position" when it is in the lower position » page 86 and the luggage compartment cover has been taken out » page 82.

Folding up

› Remove the luggage compartment cover from the vehicle » page 82.
› Grasp the variable loading floor at handle A » Fig. 89.
› Lift the variable loading floor in the direction of the arrow 1 until the folding corners B lock into place in area C.

Folding down

› Push the folding corners B » Fig. 89 on both sides of the variable loading floor in the direction of the arrow 2 and release these from positions C.
› Grasp the variable loading floor in the middle or at handle A.
› Fold down the variable loading floor in the direction of arrow 3.

WARNING

The variable loading floor in the "parking position" restricts the driver's view at the back.

CAUTION

- The variable loading floor can only be in set to the "parking position" when it is in the lower position and the luggage compartment cover has been taken out.
- If the variable loading floor is in the "parking position", the "parking position" on the luggage compartment cover cannot be set » page 83.

Roof rack

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

fixing points for base support 88
Roof load 88

WARNING

- The transported items on the roof rack must be securely attached – risk of accident!
- Always secure the load with appropriate and undamaged lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- Distribute the load evenly over the roof rack system.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- Avoid abrupt and sudden driving/braking manoeuvres.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstance – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Only roof racks from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range should be used.
- When dealing with roof rack systems, the installation instructions supplied with the roof luggage rack system must be observed.
- On models fitted with a power sliding/tilting roof, ensure that the extended sliding/tilting roof does not hit any items of luggage transported on the roof.
- Ensure that the boot lid does not hit the roof load when opened.
- The height of the vehicle changes after mounting a roof luggage rack system and the load that is secured to it. Compare the vehicle height with available clearances, such as underpasses and garage doors.
- Always remove the roof luggage rack system before entering an automated car wash.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the secured load.

For the sake of the environment

The increased aerodynamic drag results in a higher fuel consumption.

fixing points for base support



Fig. 90 **Attachment points**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 88 first.

Installation location of the attachment points for roof rack bars » Fig. 90

A Front attachment points
B Rear attachment points

Perform the assembly and disassembly according to the enclosed instructions.

CAUTION

Observe the information regarding the assembly and disassembly in the enclosed instructions.

Roof load

Read and observe ! and ! on page 88 first.

The maximum permissible roof load (including roof rack system) of **75 kg** and the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle should not be exceeded.

The full permissible roof load cannot be used if a roof rack system with a lower load carrying capacity is used. In this case, the roof rack system must only be loaded up to the maximum weight limit specified in the fitting instructions.

Heating and air conditioning

Heating, ventilation, cooling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Air outlet vents 90
Air distribution control 90
Heating 91
Air conditioning (manual air conditioning) 91
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning) 92
Efficient handling of the cooling system 93
malfunctions 93

The heating and air conditioning ventilate and heat the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system only operates if the following conditions are met.

✓ The cooling system is switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above approx. +2 °C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

If the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and air humidity drops in the vehicle. The cooling system prevents the windows from misting up during winter months.

It is possible to briefly activate re-circulated air mode to enhance the cooling effect » page 90.

WARNING

- For your own safety and that of other road users, ensure that all the windows are free of ice, snow and misting.
- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting up.

WARNING (Continued)

- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.
- To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.
  - The difference between the indoor temperature and the outdoor air temperature should not be greater than about 5 ° C.
  - The cooling system is to be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
  - Once a year, a disinfection of the air conditioner or the Climatronic is to be carried out by a specialist company.

CAUTION

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free from ice, snow or leaves, for example, to ensure that the heating and cooling system works properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Note

The used air streams out through the vents in the luggage compartment.

Air outlet vents

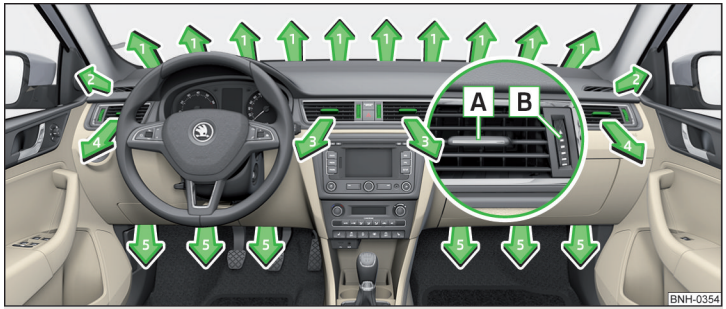


Fig. 91 **Air outlet vents**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 89 first.

Warmed, not warmed fresh or cooled air will flow out of the opened air outlet vents according to the setting of the control and the outside atmospheric conditions.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3** and **4** » Fig. 91 and the outlets can also be opened and closed individually.

Changing the direction of air flow

› To change the height of the air flow, turn the horizontal fins upward or downward using the movable adjuster A » Fig. 91.
› To adjust the lateral direction of the air flow, turn the vertical fins with the movable adjuster A to the left or to the right.

Opening

› Turn the regulator B » Fig. 91upwards.

Closing

› Turn the regulator B » Fig. 91downwards.

An overview of the available settings for adjusting the direction of the air outlet

Setting the direction of the air outlet	Active air outlet vents
	1, 2, 4
	1, 2, 4, 5
	4, 5
	3, 4

Note

To ensure that the heating and air conditioning systems work properly, do not block the air outlet vents.

Air distribution control

Read and observe ! and ! on page 89 first.

Recirculated air mode mostly prevents polluted air outside the vehicle from getting into the vehicle, for example when driving through a tunnel or when standing in a traffic jam.

In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Heating and air conditioning (manual air conditioning)

To turn the recirculation mode **on or off,** press the Symbol key .

The air recirculation mode is automatically turned off by turning the air distribution control C to position » Fig. 92 *on page 91* or » Fig. 93 *on page 91*.

Recirculated air mode can be switched on again from this setting by repeatedly pressing the symbol button .

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

To **switch on** press the Symbol key . The symbol (pos. 7 » Fig. 94 *on page 92*) appears in the display.

To **switch off** press the symbol key again. The symbol in the display goes out.

WARNING

The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because there is no supply of fresh air from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. The risk of having an accident increases. Switch off recirculated air mode as soon as the windows start to mist up.

CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from inside the vehicle is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Note

If recirculated air mode is switched on for around 15 minutes, the symbol will begin to flash in the Climatronic display as a sign that the recirculated air mode is switched on long-term. If the recirculated air mode is not switched off, the symbol flashes for around 5 minutes.

Heating

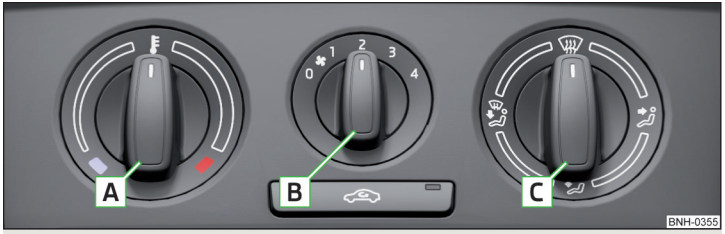


Fig. 92 **Heating Controls**

Read and observe and on page 89 first.

Individual functions can be set off or on by turning the knob or by pressing the button. If the function is on, the warning light illuminates in the button.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 92

A Setting temperature
- Lower temperature
- Increase temperature

B Set the blower level (level 0: blowers off, level 4: the highest blower speed)

C Setting the direction of the air outlet » page 90
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow in the footwell
- Airflow over the windows and into the footwell

Switch recirculation on/off » page 90

Air conditioning (manual air conditioning)

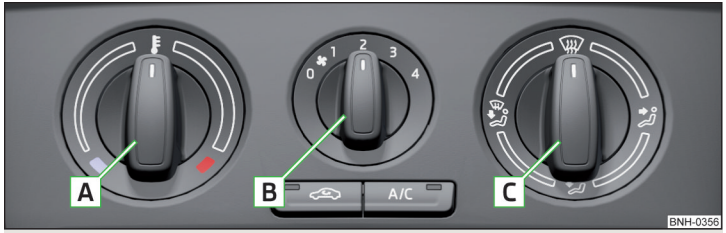


Fig. 93 **Controls of the air conditioning**

Read and observe and on page 89 first.

Individual functions can be set off or on by turning the knob or by pressing the corresponding button. If the function is on, the warning light illuminates in the button.

Functions of the individual controls » Fig. 93

A Setting temperature
- Lower temperature
- Increase temperature

B Set the blower level (level 0: blowers off, level 4: the highest blower speed)

C Setting the direction of the air outlet » page 90
- Air flow to the windows
- Air flow to the upper body
- Air flow in the footwell
- Airflow over the windows and into the footwell

Switch recirculation on/off » page 90

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

Note

▪ The warning light in the button **A/C** illuminates after activation, even if not all of the conditions for the function of the cooling system have been met. By lighting up of the warning light in the button, the operational readiness of the cooling system is signalled.

▪ During operation of the air conditioning, an increase in engine idle speed may occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure sufficient heating comfort.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)



Fig. 94 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 89 first.

The Climatronic in **automatic mode** ensures the best-possible setting of the temperature of the outflowing air, the blower stage and air distribution.

The system also takes sunlight into account, which eliminates the need to alter the settings manually afterwards.

Individual functions can be set off or on by turning the knob or by pressing the corresponding button. When switched on the display shows the corresponding icon.

Functions of the various controls and display » Fig. 94

1 Setting temperature
- Lower temperature
- Increase temperature

2 Selected temperature

3 Degrees Celsius or Fahrenheit

4 Automatic operation of the air conditioning system is switched on

5 Intensive windshield defroster switched on

6 Direction of air flow

7 Recirculated air mode activated

8 Cooling system activated

9 Set blower speed

10 Set the temperature (turn to the left: Reduce fan speed, turn to the right: Increase blower speed)

11 Interior temperature sensor

AUTO Switching automatic mode on

MAX Switching the intensive windshield defroster on/off - when this function is switched on, the warning light illuminates in the button

Switching the airflow to the windows on and off

Switching the airflow to the upper body on and off

Switching the airflow to the footwell on and off

Switch recirculation on/off » page 90

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active, whereby the lowest temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting temperature

The set temperature value appears in the display (pos. 2 » Fig. 94).

To **switch between degrees Celsius and degrees Fahrenheit**, the keys **AUTO** and **A/C** are to be pressed and held simultaneously.

The information appears in the display in the desired temperature measuring unit (pos. 3 » Fig. 94).

The interior temperature can be set between +18 °C and +29 °C. The interior temperature is regulated automatically within this range.

If you select the temperature below +18 °C, "LO" appears in the display.

If you select a temperature higher than +29 ℃, "HI" appears in the display.

At both end positions, Climatronic runs at maximum cooling/heating output and the temperature is automatically not regulated.

Controlling blower
The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature. However, the blower level can be manually adjusted to suit your particular needs.

If the blower speed is reduced to a minimum, Climatronic is switched off.

The blower speed set is indicated by displaying the corresponding number of segments (pos. 9 » Fig. 94) in the display.

Automatic mode
The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

To **switch on** press the **AUTO** button. The display shows **AUTO** (pos. 4 » Fig. 94).

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed. The temperature is nevertheless regulated.

WARNING
- Do not switch off the Climatronic system for longer than necessary.
- Switch on the Climatronic system as soon as the windows mist up.

Note
- Do not stick anything on or cover the interior temperature sensor 11 » Fig. 94; it could have an unfavourable effect on the Climatronic system.
- During operation of the Climatronic, an increase in engine idle speed can occur under certain circumstances in order to ensure adequate heating comfort.
- As soon as the windscreen mists up, press the symbol button MAX. Press the **AUTO** button once the windscreen has demisted.

Efficient handling of the cooling system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 89 first.

The air conditioning system compressor uses power from the engine when in cooling mode, which will affect the fuel consumption.

It recommended to open the windows or the doors of a vehicle for which the interior has been strongly heated through the effect of direct sunlight in order to allow the heated air to escape.

The cooling system should not be on if the windows are open.

For the sake of the environment
Pollutant emissions are also reduced when fuel is saved » page 111.

malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 89 first.

If the cooling system does not operate at outside temperatures higher than +5 °C, there is a problem in the system. The reasons for this may be.
› One of the fuses has blown. Check the fuse and replace if necessary » page 173.
› The cooling system has switched off automatically for a short time because the coolant temperature of the engine is too hot » page 32.

If you are not able to resolve the operational problem yourself, or if the cooler output has reduced, switch off the cooling system and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Communication and multimedia

Universal telephone installation GSM II

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Introductory information 94
Internal Phonebook 95
Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel 95
Symbols in the display 96
Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system 96
Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display 97

ŠKODA permits the operation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a professionally installed external aerial and a maximum transmission power of up to 10 watts.

Please consult a ŠKODA Partner for information about the possibility of installing and operating mobile phones and two-way radio systems with a transmission power of more than 10 W.

Operating mobile phones or two-way radio systems may interfere with the functionality of the electronic systems in your vehicle.

This could be for the following reasons.
› no external aerial.
› external aerial incorrectly installed.
› transmission power greater than 10 watts.

WARNING

- Concentrate fully at all times on your driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for the operation of your vehicle.
- The national regulations for using a mobile phone in a vehicle must be observed.
- If a mobile phone or a two-way radio system is operated in a vehicle without an external aerial or an external aerial which has been installed incorrectly, this can increase the strength of the electromagnetic field inside the vehicle.
- Two-way radio systems, mobile phones or mounts must not be installed on airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.

WARNING (Continued)

- Never leave a mobile phone on a seat, on the dash panel or in any area where it can become a projectile during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision — risk of injury.
- The Bluetooth® function must be switched off by a specialist company before the vehicle can be transported by air.

Note

- We recommend that the installation of mobile phones and two-way radio systems in a vehicle be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Not all mobile phones that enable Bluetooth® communication are compatible with the universal telephone pre-installation GSM II. You can ask a ŠKODA Partner whether your telephone is compatible with the GSM II universal telephone fitting.
- The range of the Bluetooth® connection to the hands-free system is restricted to the vehicle interior. The range is dependent on local factors, e.g. obstacles between the devices and mutual interferences with other devices. If your mobile phone is in a jacket pocket, for example, this can lead to difficulties when establishing a connection with the hands-free-system or transferring data.

Introductory information

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

The universal telephone pre-installation GSM II (hands-free system) includes a convenience mode for the mobile phone via voice control, the multifunction steering wheel, the radio or navigation system.

The universal telephone pre-installation GSM II comprises the following functions.
› Phone Phonebook » page 95.
› Convenience operation of the telephone via the multifunction steering wheel » page 95.
› Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display » page 97.
› Voice control of the telephone » page 98.
› Music playback from the telephone or other multimedia units » page 100.

All communication between a mobile phone and your vehicle's hands-free system is established with the help of Bluetooth® technology.

Internal Phonebook

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

An internal phonebook is part of the hands-free system. This phone phonebook can be used depending on the type of mobile phone.

After the first connection of the telephone, the system begins to load the phone book from the phone and the SIM card into the memory of the control unit.

Each time the telephone has established a new connection with the hands-free system, an update of the relevant phone book is performed. The updating can take a few minutes. During this time the phone book, which was stored after the last update was completed, is available. Newly stored telephone numbers are only shown after the updating has ended.

The update is interrupted if a telephone event (e.g. incoming or outgoing call, voice control dialogue) occurs during the updating procedure. After the telephone event has ended, the updating starts anew.

The internal phonebook provides 2,500 free memory locations. Each contact can contain up to 4 numbers.

If the number of contacts loaded exceeds 2,500, the phone book is not complete.

Operating the phone on the multifunction steering wheel

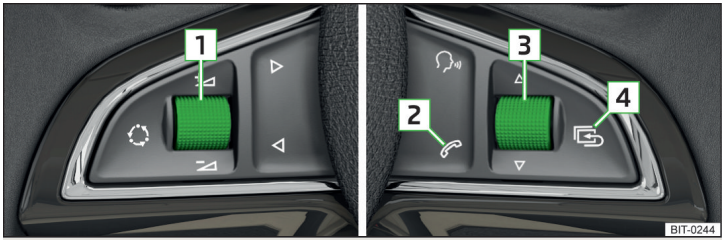


Fig. 95 **Multifunction steering wheel: Control buttons for the telephone**

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

To minimize driver distraction when operating the telephone, the basic telephone's functions can be set by simply operating the buttons located on the steering wheel » Fig. 95.

This applies only if your vehicle has been equipped with the universal telephone installation at the factory.

The buttons control the functions for the operating mode of the current telephone.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

Button / adjustment wheel » Fig. 95	Action	Operation
1	Press briefly	(MUTE 🔇)
1	Turn upwards	Increase volume

Button / adjustment wheel » Fig. 95	Action	Operation
1	Turn downwards	Decrease volume
2	Press briefly	Accept a call/end a call Display of the basic Phone menu → [a] Main Phone menu → List of dialled numbers → Call selected contact
2	Press and hold button	Reject the incoming call
3	Turn up/down	Previous / next menu item
3	Press briefly	Confirm selected menu item
3	Press and hold button	Continuously display first letter of the phone book
3	Quickly turn upwards	To the previous initial letter in the telephone book
3	Quickly turn downwards	To the next initial letter in the telephone book
4	Press briefly	Return to a previous level in the menu
4	Press and hold button	Exit telephone menu

[a] The symbol The → symbol means briefly press button again.

Symbols in the display

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

The following symbols are displayed in the Maxi DOT display.

Symbol	Meaning
	Charge status of the telephone battery[a]
	Signal strength[a]
	A phone is connected to the hands-free system.
	The hands-free system is visible to other devices.
	A multimedia unit is connected to the hands-free system.

[a] This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Connecting the mobile phone to the hands-free system

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

To connect a mobile phone with the hands-free system, the two devices must be paired. Detailed information on this is provided in the operating instructions for your mobile phone.

The following steps must be carried out for pairing[1].

› Activate Bluetooth® and the visibility of your mobile phone on your telephone.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Select the **Phone** - **New user** menu in the MAXI DOT display and wait until the hands-free system has completed the search.
› Select the phone you wish to connect from the list of units found.
› Confirm the PIN[2].

[1] On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system.*
[2] Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) is either displayed, or the PIN **1234** has to be entered manually.

› If the hands-free system announces (as standard **SKODA_BT**) on the display of the mobile phone, enter the PIN[1] within 30 seconds and wait, until the connection is established[2].
› To finish pairing in the MAXI DOT display, confirm the creation of the new user profile.

If there is no free space available to create a new user profile, delete an existing user profile.

During the connecting procedure, no other mobile phone may be connected with the hands-free system.

Up to four mobile phones can be paired with the hands-free system, whereby only one mobile phone can communicate with the hands-free system.

The visibility of the hands-free system is automatically switched off 3 minutes after the ignition is switched on and is also deactivated when the mobile phone has connected to the hands-free system.

Restoring the visibility of the hands-free system
If you have not managed to connect your mobile phone with the hands-free system within 3 minutes of switching on the ignition, the visibility of the hands-free system can be re-established for 3 minutes in one of the following ways.
› By turning the ignition off and on.
› By turning voice control off and on.
› In the MAXI DOT display under menu item **Bluetooth** - **Visibility**.

Creating a connection with an already paired mobile phone
After switching on the ignition, the connection is automatically established for the already paired mobile phone[2]. Check on your mobile phone if the automatic connection has been established.

Disconnecting the connection
The connection to a connected mobile phone can be ended in the following ways.
› By withdrawing the ignition key.
› By disconnecting the hands-free system in the mobile phone.
› By disconnecting from the user in the MAXI DOT display under the menu item **Bluetooth** - **User**.

Solving connection problems
If the hands-free system reports **No paired phone found**, check the operating status of the mobile phone.
› Is the mobile phone switched on?
› Is the PIN code entered?
› Is Bluetooth® active?
› Is the visibility of the mobile phone active?
› Has the mobile phone already been paired with the hands-free system?

Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display

Read and observe ! on page 94 first.

The following menu items can be selected from the **Phone** menu.
› **Phone book**
› **Dial number**[3]
› **Call register**
› **Voice mailbox**
› **Bluetooth**[3]
› **Settings**[4]
› **Back**

Phone book
The **Phone book** menu item lists the contacts downloaded from the telephone memory and the mobile phone SIM card. ▸

[1] Depending on the Bluetooth® version on the mobile phone, an automatically generated 6-digit PIN (SSP) is either displayed, or the PIN **1234** has to be entered manually.
[2] Some mobile phones have a menu, in which the authorisation for establishing a Bluetooth® connection is completed by inputting a PIN number. If the authorisation input is required, it must always be performed when re-establishing the Bluetooth connection.
[3] On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system.*
[4] This function is not available in vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Dial number
Any telephone number can be entered in the **Dial number** menu item. The required numbers must be selected one after the other using adjustment wheel and confirmed by pressing the adjustment wheel. You can select digits **0-9**, symbols **+, ✻, #** and the **Cancel**, **Call** and **Delete** functions.

Call register
The following menu items can be selected in the **Call register** menu item.
- **Missed calls**
- **Dialled numbers**
- **Received calls**

Voice mailbox
In the **Voice mailbox** menu item, you can set the number of the voice mailbox[1)] and then dial the number.

Bluetooth
The following menu items can be selected from the **Bluetooth** menu item.
- **User** - Overview of the stored telephones
- **New user** - Search for new mobile phones that are in the reception range
- **Visibility** - Switches on the visibility of the hands-free system for other devices
- **Media player** - Playback via Bluetooth®
  - **Active device** - Connected device
  - **Paired devices** - List of paired devices
  - **Find** - Device search
- **Phone name** - option to change the name of the phone (default SKODA_BT)

Settings
The following menu items can be selected from the **Settings** menu item.
- **Phone book** - Phonebook
  - **Update** - Update of the phone book[1)]
  - **List** - Arrange the entries in the phone book
    - **Surname** - Arrange according to surname
    - **Surname** - Sort by contact name
- **Ring tone** - Ring tone setting

Back
Return in the Start menu of the telephone.

[1)] On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system.*

Voice control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Dialogue 98
Voice commands 99

Dialogue



Fig. 96
Multifunction steering wheel: Voice control

The period of time during which the system is ready to receive voice commands and to carry them out is called "dialogue". The system gives audible feedback and guides you through the relevant functions if necessary.

Optimum understanding of the voice commands depends on several factors.
› Speak at a normal volume without intonation or excessive pauses.
› Avoid poor pronunciation.
› Close the doors, windows and sliding roof in order to reduce or eliminate disturbing noise from outside.
› It is recommended to speak louder at higher speeds, so that your voice is louder than the increased surrounding noise.
› During the dialogue, limit background noise in the vehicle, e.g. passengers talking at the same time.
› Do not speak when the system is making an announcement.

The microphone for voice control is housed in the moulded headliner and directed towards the driver and front passenger. Therefore, the driver and the front passenger can operate the equipment.

Entering a phone number
The telephone number can be entered as a continuous sequence of numbers spoken one after the other (the whole number at once) or in the form of digit blocks (separated by short pauses). After each string of digits (separated by a brief pause in speaking), all of the digits detected up to now are repeated by the system.

The digits **0-9** and symbols **+**, **,** **#** are permitted. The system does not recognize any combination of connected numbers, e.g. "twenty-three".

Switching on voice control
Briefly press the button 1 » Fig. 96 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Switching off voice control
If the system is currently playing a message, the message that is currently being played must be terminated by briefly pressing button 1 » Fig. 96 on the multifunction steering wheel.

If the system is expecting a voice command, you can end the dialogue yourself as follows.
› With the **CANCEL** voice command.
› Briefly press the button 1 » Fig. 96 on the multifunction steering wheel.

Note
- The dialogue is immediately terminated in the event of an incoming call.
- The voice control is only possible in vehicles fitted with a multifunction steering wheel with telephone control.

Voice commands

Basic voice commands

Voice command	Action
HELP	After this command the system repeats all possible commands.
CALL XYZ	This command calls up the contact from the phone book.
PHONE BOOK	After this command, for example, the phone book can be repeated back to you, a voice entry for the contact can be updated or deleted, etc.
CALL REGISTER	Lists of dialled numbers, missed calls, etc.
DIAL NUMBER	After this command, a telephone number can be entered to establish a connection with the requested party.
REDIAL	After this command the system calls the last dialled number.
MUSIC[a)]	Play music from the mobile phone or another paired device.
FURTHER OPTIONS	After this command the system offers additional context-dependent commands.
SETTINGS	Selection for setting Bluetooth®, dialogue etc.
CANCEL	The dialogue is ended.

a) On vehicles fitted with the Amundsen+ navigation system, this function can be accessed via the navigation system menu; refer to the » *operating instructions for the Amundsen+ navigation system*.

If a voice command is not detected, the system answers with **"Pardon?"**, and a new entry can be made. After the second error, the system repeats the help. After the third error the answer **"Cancelled."** is given and the dialogue is ended.

Store voice recording of a contact
If automatic name recognition does not work reliably for some contacts, you can choose to save your own voice tag for the contact in the **Phone book** - **Voice tag** - **Record** menu item.

Your own voice entry can also be saved using the voice control in the menu **FURTHER OPTIONS**.

Multimedia

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Music playback via Bluetooth® 100
Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel 100
AUX and MDI inputs (AUX and USB) 101

Music playback via Bluetooth®

The universal telephone pre-installation GSM II makes it possible to play back music via Bluetooth® from the devices such as MP3 player, mobile phone or notebook.

To ensure that music can be played via Bluetooth®, you must first pair the device with the hands-free system in the **Phone** - **Bluetooth** - **Media player** menu.

The music playback process is performed on the connected device.

The universal telephone pre-installation GSM II ensures that the music played back via the hands-free system can be controlled with the remote control » page 99, *Voice commands*.

Note

The device being connected must support the Bluetooth® A2DP profile; refer to the operating instructions for the relevant device being connected.

Operating the radio and navigation system on the multifunction steering wheel

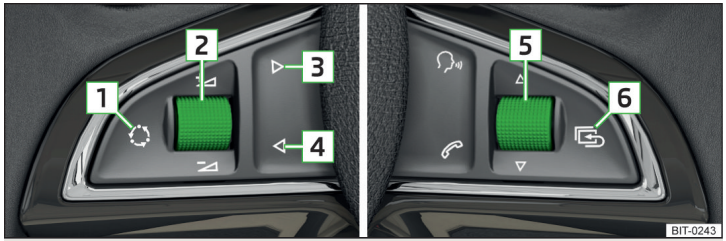


Fig. 97 **Multifunction steering wheel: Navigation control buttons**

The multifunction steering wheel features buttons for operating the basic functions for the factory-fitted radio and navigation system » Fig. 97.

The radio and the navigation system can of course still be operated via the devices. A description is included in the relevant operating instructions.

If the side lights are switched on, the buttons on the multifunction steering wheel are illuminated.

The buttons apply for the respective operating mode of the current radio, audio, video or navigation system.

The following functions can be completed by pressing or turning the buttons.

Button / adjustment wheel » Fig. 97	Action	Radio	Audio sources	Navigation
1	Press	Change audio source		
2	Press	Switch tone off/on (MUTE)		Interrupt current navigation announcement
2	Turn upwards	Increase volume		
2	Turn downwards	Decrease volume		
3	Press briefly	Skip to next channel	Skip to next track	without function
		Interrupt traffic report		
3	Press and hold button	without function	Fast forward	without function
4	Press briefly	Switch to previous channel	Change to start of track[a)]	without function
		Interrupt traffic report		
4	Press and hold button	without function	Fast rewind	without function

Button / adjustment wheel » Fig. 97	Action	Radio	Audio sources	Navigation
5	Turn upwards	Switch to the previous station and at the same time display list of saved/available stations	Skip to next track	Show the option to stop navigation or display the list of recent destinations
5	Turn downwards	Switch to the next station and at the same time display list of saved/available stations	Change to start of track[a]	
6	Press briefly	Call up the main menu		

[a] To go to the previous track, press the adjustment wheel twice or rotate it by two positions.

AUX and MDI inputs (AUX and USB)

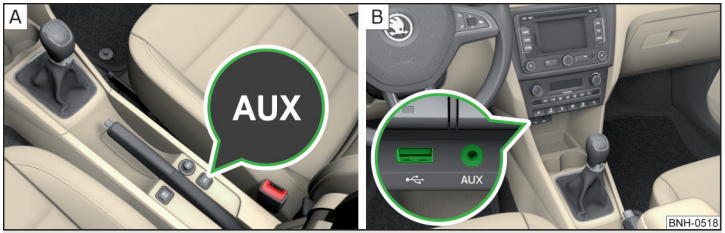


Fig. 98 **AUX input / MDI input (AUX and USB)**

Depending on the equipment, your vehicle may have AUX or MDI inputs (AUX and USB) for connecting external audio sources.

The inputs are used to connect external devices (e.g. MP3 player) as well as for listening to music from these devices via the factory fitted radio or navigation system.

For connecting Apple devices to the MDI input use a "USB extension cable and a 3.5 mm jack" from the ŠKODA original accessories. Connected Apple devices can be operated from this device.

A description of the inputs can be found in the relevant operating instructions for the radio or navigation system.

AUX input

For vehicles with an AUX input this depends on the equipment and is located at one of the following locations.

- Between the front seats in the centre console » Fig. 98 - A.
- Above the storage box of the front centre console » Fig. 98 – B.
- On the front of the Amundsen+ navigation system.

The AUX input is indicated with the lettering AUX .

Audio devices can be connected via the standard 3.5 mm jack plug to the input.

USB input

If vehicles are equipped with the USB input, this will be located above the storage compartment in the front centre console » Fig. 98 - B.

The USB input is indicated with the symbol .

USB devices can be connected at the input (such as storage sources).

SmartGate

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Connection with SmartGate 102
Smart Gate website 102
Password Management 103

SmartGate is a system which transmits vehicle data via Wi-Fi.

The ŠKODA applications installed in a connected communications device (e.g. phone, tablet, notebook) [1] offer the possibility to further process the received data.

Available applications and further information can be found on the ŠKODA website..

WARNING

- The national legal regulations for using mobile communication devices in a vehicle must be observed.
- Do not fit the equipment or mounts to be connected onto airbag covers or within the immediate deployment range of the airbags.
- Never leave a connected device in the deployment area of an airbag, on a seat, on the dash panel or any another area, from which it can be thrown during a sudden braking manoeuvre, an accident or a collision - there is a risk of injury.

Note

The Wi-Fi range is limited to the interior of the vehicle.

Connection with SmartGate

Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

For a successful connection the following conditions must be met.

✓ Wi-Fi is turned on in the device to be connected.
✓ The ignition is switched on.

Connect

› Can enable the connected device to search for available Wi-Fi networks (see operating instructions for the connected device).
› In the found networks menu, select the connection to the "SmartGate_ ... "network [2].
› Enter the password (the password is pre-set at the factory to the complete Vehicle Identification Number - enter capital letters).

Disconnecting the connection

The connection to SmartGate can be ended in the following ways.

› By disconnecting the connected device from SmartGate.
› By turning off the Wi-Fi in the connected device.
› By switching off the ignition and removing the key for more than 5 s (for vehicles with starter button - by turning off the engine and opening the driver's door).

Automatic connection

The connection to SmartGate is automatically restored under the following conditions.

✓ Wi-Fi is turned on in the device to be connected.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The device to be connected stores the password required for the connection check.

Connection problems

If the connection fails, check the following points.

› Are the conditions for a successful connection fulfilled?
› Is Smart Gate available in the list of available Wi-Fi networks?
› Has the password required for the connection check been entered?
› Is the password is required for the connection check correct?
› Is the device to be connected still connected to another Wi-Fi network?

If the above items are ok but the connection still fails, contact a ŠKODA partner.

Note

Up to four devices can be connected to SmartGate at a time.

Smart Gate website

Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

There is a special website for the SmartGate system.

The following address must be entered in the web browser of the connected device.

HTTP://192.168.123.1

[1] The applications support communication devices with the Android operating system version 4.0.x and later and iOS 7.xx and higher.

[2] The last six symbols of the VIN vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

This website contains information about the vehicle, the Wi-Fi connection and SmartGate.

In the Configuration area the Wi-Fi connection settings can be adjusted.

Save the setting changes
The setting changes are only applied after performing the following steps.
› The changes are saved by pressing the "Save" button.
› SmartGate is restarted by pressing the "Reboot "button.

Password Management

Read and observe ! on page 102 first.

Password management can be done in the connected device on the Smart-Gate website» page 102, *Smart Gate website*.

The changes are applied after saving and restarting SmartGate » page 103, *Save the setting changes*.

Change password
› Enter a new password in the Configuration area in menu option WPA / WPA2 key.

The password must be 8-17 characters without diacritics or special characters (for example, -, /, etc.).

Connection option without entering a password
› In the Configuration area set the value Open in the menu item Security .

Forgot password
If you have forgotten your password, SmartGate must be reset to factory settings in a specialized workshop.

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and turning off the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobilizer 104
Lock/unlock steering lock 104
Ignition on / off and start the engine 105
Switching off the engine 105

With the key in the ignition, the ignition can be switched on and off and the engine can be started / stopped.

WARNING

- While driving with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on » page 105, *Ignition on / off and start the engine*.
  - With the ignition off, the steering may lock » page 104 - danger of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 107, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering could be blocked – risk of accident!
- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorized persons, such as children, for example, could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - there is a danger of injury, accidents and damage!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is risk of accident, damage or theft!
- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – risk of accident!

WARNING

- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is the danger of poisoning and death!
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a danger of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 166.

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobilizer

Read and observe ! and ! on page 104 first.

The electronic immobilizer makes a possible attempted theft or unauthorized use of your vehicle more difficult.

An electronic chip is integrated in the head of the key. The immobiliser is deactivated with the aid of this chip when the key is inserted in the ignition lock.

The electronic immobiliser is automatically activated when the ignition key is withdrawn from the lock.

The engine will not start if a non-authorized ignition key is used.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Immobilizer active.**

S **IMMOBILIZER**

Lock/unlock steering lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 104 first.

The steering lock (steering lock) deters any attempted theft of your vehicle.

Locking
› Withdraw the ignition key.
› Turn the steering wheel to the left or right until the steering lock clicks into place.

Unlocking
› Insert the key into the ignition lock.
› Switch on the ignition » page 105.

The steering lock is unlocked.

If the ignition switch cannot be turned on, then turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly and thereby unlock the steering lock.

Ignition on / off and start the engine

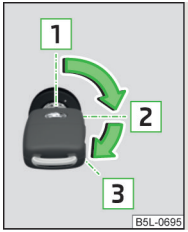


Fig. 99
Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 104 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 99

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching ignition on/off
› Turn key to position 2.

The ignition is switched on.

› Turn key to position 1.

The ignition is switched off.

Procedure for starting the engine
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.
› Turn the key into position 3 to the stop and release immediately after the engine has been started – do not apply the accelerator.

After letting go, the vehicle key will return to position 2.

For vehicles with **diesel engines** the glow plug warning light goes on during starting. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after approx. half a minute.

Vehicles with the START-STOP system and manual gearbox
The engine will not start if the clutch pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Depress clutch to start.**
S **CLUTCH**

Vehicles with the START-STOP system and automatic gearbox
The engine will not start if the brake pedal is not depressed.

The following message is shown in the information cluster display.

M **Depress brake to start.**
S **BRAKE**

Note
- The engine running noises may louder at first be louder for a short time after starting the cold engine. This is quite normal and is not an operating problem.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.

Switching off the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 104 first.

› Stop the vehicle » page 107, *Parking*.
› Turn key to position 1 » Fig. 99 *on page 105*.

The engine and the ignition are switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P** .

CAUTION

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been operated over a prolonged period at high loads but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Note

After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Brakes and parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information on braking 106
Handbrake 107
Parking 107

WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- The clutch pedal must be actuated when braking on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who might, for example, release the handbrake or take the vehicle out of gear unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle could then start to move – risk of accident!
- Observe the recommendations on the new brake pads » page 111, *New brake pads*.

CAUTION

Never let the brakes slip with light pressure on the pedal if braking is not necessary. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.

Information on braking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 106 first.

Wear-and-tear

The wear of the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style.

The brake pads wear more quickly if a lot of journeys are completed in towns and over short distances or if a very sporty style of driving is adopted.

Under these **severe conditions**, the thickness of the brake pads must also be checked by a specialist garage between service intervals.

Wet roads or road salt

The performance of the brakes can be delayed as the brake discs and brake pads may be moist or have a coating of ice or layer of salt on them in winter. The brakes are cleaned and dried by applying the brakes several times » !.

Corrosion

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the bake pads occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned by applying the brakes several times » !.

Long or steep slopes

Before travelling a long distance with a steep gradient, reduce speed and shift into the next lowest gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. Any additional braking should be completed intermittently, not continuously.

Emergency brake display

If the brakes are applied in full and the control unit for the braking system considers the situation to be dangerous for the following traffic, the brake light flashes automatically.

After the speed was reduced below around 10 km/h or the vehicle was stopped, the brake light stops flashing and the hazard warning light system switches on. The hazard warning light system is switched off automatically after accelerating or driving off again.

Faults in the brake surface

If it is found that the braking distance has suddenly become longer and that the brake pedal can be depressed further, the brake system may be faulty.

Visit a specialist garage immediately and adjust your style of driving appropriately, as you will not know the exact extent of the damage.

Low brake fluid level
An insufficient level of brake fluid may result in problems in the brake system. The level of the brake fluid is monitored electronically » page 35, *Brake system*.

Brake booster
The brake booster increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

WARNING
Only apply the brakes for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.

Handbrake



Fig. 100
Handbrake

Read and observe ! and ! on page 106 first.

The hand brake is used when stopping and parking for securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.

Apply
› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Releasing
› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the locking button » Fig. 100.
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light (P) illuminates when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied.

The following instruction is shown in the MAXI DOT display.

Release parking brake!

The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of more than around 6 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING
Please note that the handbrake must be fully released. A handbrake which is only partially released can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Parking

Read and observe ! and ! on page 106 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » !.

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission** ,place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **Manual gearboxes** select the first gear or reverse gear.
› Release the brake pedal.

WARNING
The parts of the exhaust system can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or such like. - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing 108
Pedals 108

Manual gear changing

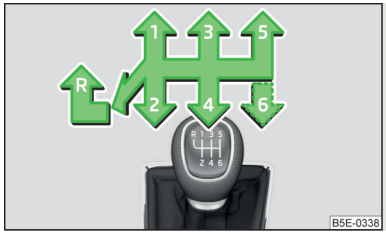


Fig. 101
Gear shift pattern of 5 gear or 6 gear manual gearbox

The individual gear positions are shown on the gear shift » Fig. 101.

The gear shift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 43.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Engaging reverse gear

› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal must be fully depressed.
› Move the shift lever to the idle position, switch and press down.
› Move the shift lever fully to the left and then forward into the **R** position » Fig. 101.

The reversing lights will come on once the reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

▪ If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gear shift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gear shift mechanism to wear excessively.
▪ When stopping on a slope, never try to keep the vehicle in position by using the clutch and accelerator pedals – this may lead to damage to the clutch parts.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

In the driver's foot well, only a foot mat, which is attached to the two corresponding attachment points, may be used.

Only use factory-supplied foot mats or foot mats from the range of ŠKODAOriginal Accessories, which are fitted to two the two required attachment points.

WARNING

No objects may be placed in the driver's foot well – risk due to obstruction or limitation of pedal operation!

Automatic gearbox

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Modes and use of selector lever 109
Selector lever lock 109
Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic) 110
Starting-off and driving 110

The automatic transmission performs automatic gear changes.

The modes for the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

▪ Never accelerate when the mode for moving forward is set with the selector lever - there is a risk of accident!
▪ Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – risk of accident!
▪ When the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, the vehicle must be held in mode **D**, **S** or **R** with the brake pedal. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle crawls forward.
▪ When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever is always to be put in the **P** mode. Otherwise the vehicle could then start to move and potentially cause an accident.

CAUTION

- If the selector lever is moved to mode **N** while driving, the accelerator pedal must be released and you will need to wait until the engine has reached its idling speed before moving the selector lever to a forward driving mode again.
- When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever, when starting, must always be in **P** mode.
- When stopping on a slope, never try to keep the vehicle in position by using the accelerator pedal – this may lead to gear damage.

Note

After the ignition is switched off, the ignition key can only be withdrawn if the selector lever is in the position **P**.

Modes and use of selector lever

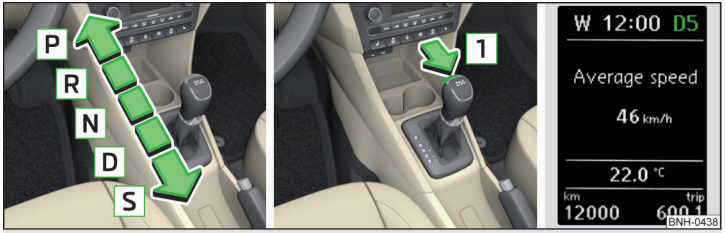


Fig. 102 **Selection lever / lock button / display**

Read and observe and on page 108 first.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 102.

The following modes can be selected with the selector lever » Fig. 102.

P – Parking mode
The driven wheels are locked mechanically in this mode.

Parking mode must only be selected when the vehicle is stationary.

R – Reverse gear
Reverse gear can only be engaged when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idling speed.

N – Neutral
The power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted in this mode.

D - Mode for forwards travel (normal programme)
In mode **D**, the forward gears are automatically changed according to the engine load, accelerator pedal actuation and driving speed.

S - Mode for forwards travel (sports programme)
In mode **S**, the forward gears are shifted automatically up and down **at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**.

Before changing to mode **S** from mode **D**, press the lock button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 102.

Fault in the automatic gearbox
A fault in the automatic gearbox is noticeable e.g. with the following.
› Only certain gears are selected.
› The reverse gear **R** cannot be used.
› Shifting gears in Tiptronic mode is not possible.

CAUTION

If a fault occurs on the automatic gearbox, help from a professional service provider should be sought immediately - there is a risk of damaging the vehicle.

Selector lever lock

Read and observe and on page 108 first.

The selector lever is locked in modes **P** and **N** to prevent the forwards travel mode from being selected accidentally and setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is only locked when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

Releasing selector lever from mode P or N (selector lever lock)
› Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of 1 » Fig. 102 *on page 109* .

Just depress the brake pedal, if you would like to change from the mode **N** to **D**.

Defective selector lever lock
If the selector lever lock is defective or its power supply is interrupted (e.g. discharged vehicle battery, faulty fuse), the selector lever can no longer be moved out of position **P** in the normal manner and the vehicle can no longer be driven. The selector lever must be emergency released » page 171.

Note
If you want to move the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents modes **R** or **N** from being accidentally selected.

Manual shifting of gears (Tiptronic)

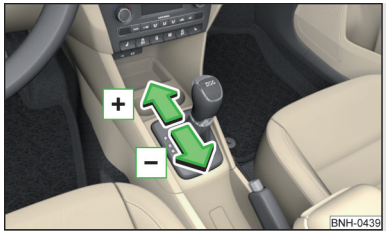


Fig. 103
Selector lever

Read and observe ! and ! on page 108 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears on the selector lever. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the » Fig. 102 *on page 109*display.

The gear shift indicator must be observed when changing gear » page 43.

Switching to manual shifting
› Push the gear selector from mode **D** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle.

Shifting up gears
› Push the selector lever [+] » Fig. 103forwards.

Shifting down gears
› Push the selector lever [-] » Fig. 103backwards.

Note
▪ It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear on the brakes » page 106, *Information on braking*.
▪ When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached.
▪ If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine over-revving.

Starting-off and driving

Read and observe ! and ! on page 108 first.

Starting off
› Start the engine.
› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Press the lock button in the direction of [1] » Fig. 102 *on page 109* and hold.
› Move the selector lever into the desired position » page 109and then release the lock button.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

Stopping (while the car is moving)
› Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
› Keep holding the brake pedal until driving is resumed.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time, such as at a cross roads.

Kickdown
The kickdown function allows you to achieve the maximum acceleration of your vehicle while driving.

When the accelerator pedal is fully depressed, the kickdown function is activated in any forward driving mode.

The gearbox shifts down one or more gears depending on the vehicle speed and engine speed, and the vehicle accelerates.

The gearbox does not shift up into the highest gear until the engine has reached its maximum revolutions for this gear range.

! WARNING
Rapid acceleration, particularly on slippery roads, can lead to loss of vehicle control – risk of accident!

Retraction and economical driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving in ____ 111
Tips for economical driving ____ 111

The fuel consumption, degree of pollution and vehicle wear depend on driving style, road condition, weather conditions and the like.

Driving in

Driving in the engine
The engine has to be run in during the first 1,500 kilometres. During this period, the driving style decides on the quality of the driving-in process.

During the first 1,000 km ,we recommend not driving faster than 3/4 of the maximum permissible engine speed, not to drive at full throttle and not to use a trailer.

In the range of **1,000 to 1,500 kilometres,** the engine load can be increased up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

New tyres
New tyres must firstly be "run in", as they do not offer optimal grip at first.

Therefore, drive with special care for the first 500 km or so.

New brake pads
New brake pads have to first "grind in" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect.

Therefore, drive with special care for the first 200 km or so.

Tips for economical driving

To achieve the lowest possible fuel consumption, the following instructions must be observed.

Looking ahead when driving
Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.

Change gear in an energy saving and timely manner
Observe the recommended gear » page 43.

Avoid full throttle and high speeds
Fuel consumption will be halved if you drive at only 3/4 of the possible top speed of your vehicle.

Reducing idling
When the engine is switched off, such as when waiting in a traffic jam, the fuel economy is already greater after 30 - 40 s than the fuel quantity which is required for engine re-start.

Avoid short distances
When driving a short distance of less than about 4 km, the engine cannot reach its operating temperature. As long as the engine has not reached operating temperature, the fuel consumption is significantly higher than with the engine hot.

Pay attention to the correct tyre inflation pressure being maintained
Further information » page 153.

Avoid unnecessary ballast
Per 100 kg of weight, consumption increases by about 1 l/100 km. At a speed of 100-120 km/h, a vehicle fitted with a roof rack cross member without a load will use about 10 % more fuel than normal due to the increased aerodynamic drag.

Saving electricity
Electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating, air conditioning and the like) should only be turned on for as long as necessary.

Driving through water and driving off made-up roads

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving through water ____ 112
Driving off paved roads ____ 112

! WARNING

Immediately after driving through water, mud, slush and the like, braking effectiveness will be temporarily impaired » page 106, *Information on braking*. For this reason, sudden and violent braking manoeuvres are to be avoided - there is a risk of accident!

Driving through water

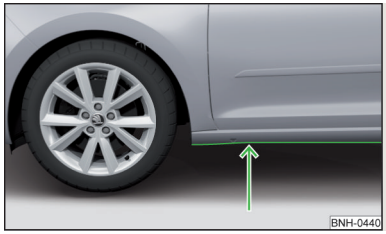


Fig. 104
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

Read and observe ! on page 111 first.

The following instructions must be observed if vehicle damage is to be avoided when driving through water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore, always determine the depth of the water before driving through water.

The water level must not reach above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 104.

› Do not drive any faster than at a walking speed.

At a higher speed, a water wave can form in front of the vehicle which can cause water to penetrate into the engine's air induction system or other parts of the vehicle.

› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

! CAUTION

- Should water penetrate into the intake system of the engine, there is a threat of serious damage being incurred by the engine parts!
- When driving through water, some vehicle parts such as chassis, electrics or transmissions can be severely damaged.
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Potholes, mud or rocks can be hidden under the water, making it difficult or impossible to drive through water.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. A vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Driving off paved roads

Read and observe ! on page 111 first.

Only drive on such roads and in such terrain, which match the vehicle parameters » page 181, *Technical data*as well as your driving skills.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can handle travelling in the given terrain.

! WARNING

Drive particularly considerately and pro-actively when not on paved roads.
- Always adjust your driving to the current terrain and weather conditions. Excessive speed or incorrect driving manoeuvres can cause damage to the vehicle and lead to serious injuries.
- Objects trapped under the base of the vehicle can damage the fuel lines, the brake system, the seals and other parts of the chassis. Check the underside of the vehicle and remove the trapped objects.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

! CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the chassis and its components can get damaged.
- Drive slowly in unknown terrain and watch out for unexpected obstacles, such as potholes, rocks, stumps, etc.
- Check up on confusing sections of unpaved roads before travelling on them and consider whether such travelling is possible without risk.

Assist systems

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 113
Anti-lock Braking System (ABS) 113
Traction Control System (TCS) 113
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 114
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) 114
Hill Hold Control (HHC) 114

This chapter deals with the functions of the braking and stabilisation systems, with the error indicator referred to in chapter » page 34, *Indicator lights*.

The braking and stabilisation systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. The brake assist systems would then fail to function – risk of accident!
- The increased safety provided by the brake assist systems must not tempt you to take safety risks – risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC)



Fig. 105
Buttons for the ESC system: Activating/deactivating TCS

Read and observe ! on page 113 first.

The ESC improves vehicle stability in dynamic driving situations, such as when the vehicle starts to skid.

The ESC monitors whether the desired direction of the current vehicle motion is occurring. In case of any deviation (e.g. oversteer), the ESC automatically brakes individual wheels to maintain the desired direction.

During an intervention in the system, the control light will blink in the instrument cluster.

The ESC system cannot be deactivated. The AST can only be deactivated with the symbol key» Fig. 105» page 113.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster when the ASR is deactivated.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.

› When driving with snow chains.
› When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
› When "rocking a car free" when it has become stuck.

Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 113 first.

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. Thereby, it helps the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Traction Control System (TCS)

Read and observe ! on page 113 first.

TCS prevents the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thereby, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

If your vehicle is fitted with the ESC system, the ASR is integrated into the ESC system » page 113.

Note

For vehicles without stabilization control (ESC), during a TCS intervention the control indicator blinks in the instrument cluster.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

Read and observe ! on page 113 first.

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes the spinning wheel, if necessary, and transmits the driving force to the other driving wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

The EDL switches off automatically in order to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. The vehicle can continue to be driven and has the same characteristics as a vehicle not fitted with EDL. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 113 first.

The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by the very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

Read and observe ! on page 113 first.

When driving on slopes, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without having to use the handbrake.

The system holds the brake pressure produced by the activation of the brake pedal for approx. 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

The brake pressure drops gradually the more you operate the accelerator pedal. If the vehicle does not start off within 2 seconds, it starts to roll back.

The HHC is active from a 5% slope if the driver's door is closed. HHC is always only active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off.

Parking aid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 115
Activation/deactivation 115

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to only as a system) draws attention via acoustic signals and an indication in the radio or navigation display when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are integrated in the rear bumper » Fig. 106 *on page 115*.

WARNING

- The system only serves as an assistance and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. For this reason, such people or objects may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. Under adverse conditions, this may cause objects or people to be not recognised by the system.
- Before reversing, you should make sure that there are no small obstacles, such as rocks, thin posts, trailer draw-bars etc. behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors clean, snow-and ice-free and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- Under adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures etc.), the system function may be limited - "incorrect recognition of obstacle".
- Additionally installed accessories such as e.g. bicycle carriers can impair the system function.

Function

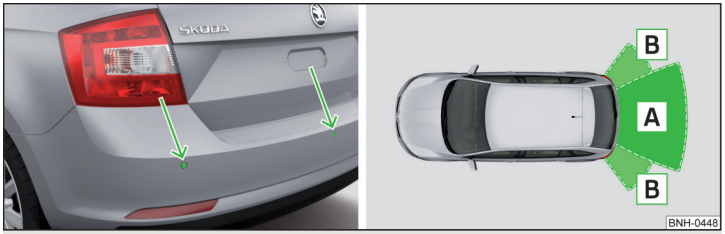


Fig. 106 **Location of the sensors / range of the sensors**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

Approximate range of sensors

Area » Fig. 106	Distance behind the vehicle (in cm)
A	160
B	60

Acoustic signals and display
The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. A continuous tone sounds from a distance of approx. 30 cm - danger area. **From this moment on, do not continue reversing!**

Description of the indications in the radio or navigation system display, » *the radio instruction manual, navigation system user guide.*

Activation/deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

The system is activated automatically by engaging the **reverse gear**. This is confirmed by a brief audible signal.

The system is deactivated by disengaging reverse gear.

Displaying an error
If a warning signal sounds for about 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the system cannot be activated when towing a trailer.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functioning 115
Operating Description 116

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal.

The status where the CCS maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

WARNING
- The CCS only serves as an assistance and does not relieve the driver of the responsibility for the vehicle operation.
- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.

Functioning

Read and observe ! on page 115 first.

Basic requirements for starting the control
- ✓ The CCS is activated.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher must be engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever must be in the **D**, **S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ The current speed must be higher than 20 km/hr.

This is only possible within the range which is permitted by the power output and braking power of the engine.

WARNING
If the engine power and engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, vehicle operation must be taken over!

Operating Description

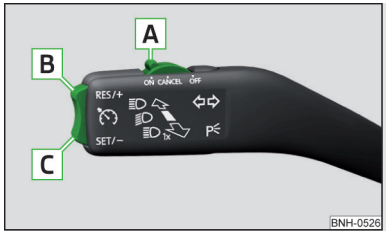


Fig. 107
Operating lever: Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 115 first.

Overview of the control elements of the CCS » Fig. 107

A	**OFF**	Deactivate CCS (delete stored speed)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	ON	Activate CCS (control deactivated)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	**SET/–**	Start control / reduce speed

[a] If no speed is stored, then the current speed is adopted.

After starting the system, the current speed is stored and the indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster.

After the interruption in the control, the stored speed can be resumed by pressing the B button.

Automatic control interruption
Automatic control interruption occurs if any of the following conditions are met.
› By pressing the brake or clutch pedal.
› When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
› Through an airbag deployment.

! WARNING
- Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.
- Control may only be resumed if the stored speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

i Note
During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

START-STOP

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating conditions of the system 117
Operation in vehicles with manual gearbox 117
Operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox 117
System related automatic start-up 118
Manually deactivating/activating the system 118
Information messages 118

The START-STOP system (hereinafter referred to as the system) saves fuel and reduces polluting emissions and CO_2 emissions by turning the engine off, e.g. when stopping at traffic lights, and starting the engine again when moving off.

! WARNING
- Never let the vehicle roll with the engine switched off.
- The brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running.

Operating conditions of the system



Fig. 108
MAXI DOT display: Engine is automatically switched off / automatic engine cut off is not possible

Read and observe ! on page 116 first.

For system-dependent automatic engine shutdown to work, the following conditions must be met.

✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The bonnet is closed.
✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.
✓ No trailer is coupled.

Some additional conditions for the system to function correctly cannot be influenced or recognised by the driver. Therefore, the system can react differently in situations which are identical from the driver's perspective.

If after stopping the car, the message **START-STOP NOT POSSIBLE** appears in the segment display or the MAXI DOT display shows the warning sign » Fig. 108, then the conditions for automatic engine shut-down are not being met.

Running the engine e.g. is essential for the following reasons.
› The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
› The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
› The current consumption is too high.
› High air-conditioning or heating capacity (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

Note

▪ If the vehicle remains outdoors for a long time in minus temperatures or in direct sunlight, it can take several hours until the internal temperature of the vehicle battery reaches a suitable temperature for proper operation of the START STOP system.
▪ If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than approx. 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened during stop mode, the engine will have to be started manually.
▪ After the manual engine start and with a manual gearbox the automatic engine shutdown can take place only when a minimum distance required for the system function has been covered.

Operation in vehicles with manual gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 116 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown
› Stop the vehicle.
› Put the gear stick into Neutral.
› Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic engine shut-down takes place, segment display shows **START-STOP ACTIVE** or the MAXI DOT display shows the warning sign Ⓐ » Fig. 108 *on page 117*.

Automatic engine start
› Depress the clutch pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again.

Operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox

Read and observe ! on page 116 first.

In compliance with the operating conditions, automatic engine shutdown / automatic engine start takes place as described.

Automatic engine shutdown
› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.

Automatic engine shut-down takes place, segment display shows **START-STOP ACTIVE** or the MAXI DOT display shows the warning sign Ⓐ » Fig. 108 *on page 117*.

Automatic engine start
› Release the brake pedal.

The automatic start procedure takes place again.

Further information on automatic transmission
The automatic engine shut down takes place when the selector lever is in positions **P**, **D**, **S** and **N** and in Tiptronic mode.

When the selector lever is in position **P**, the engine remains shut down even after you release the brake pedal. The engine starts automatically by pressing the gas pedal or by moving the selector lever into a different mode and releasing the brake pedal.

If the engine is off due to the automatic and the selector lever is put to the **R** position, then the automatic start up of the engine.

If the gear selector is moved from position **R** to the position **D, S** or **N,** the vehicle must reach a speed of more than 10 km / h before the automatic engine shutdown starts.

There is no automatic engine shutdown when the system detects a vehicle moving due to a large steering angle.

No automatic engine shutdown takes place when the vehicle is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam or when turning) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.

System related automatic start-up

Read and observe ! on page 116 first.

When the engine is off, the system can automatically start the engine before the desired journey continues. Some possible reasons for this are.
› The vehicle begins to roll, e.g. on a slope.
› The brake pedal has been actuated several times.
› The current consumption is too high.

Manually deactivating/activating the system



Fig. 109
Button for the START-STOP system

Read and observe ! on page 116 first.

Deactivating/activating
› Press the symbol Ⓐ OFF » Fig. 109 button.

When start-stop mode is deactivated, the warning light in the button lights up.

Note
If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.

Information messages

Read and observe ! on page 116 first.

The warning icons are indicated in the display of the instrument cluster.

M **Start engine manually!**
S **START MANUALLY**

One of the conditions for automatic engine start is not satisfied or the driver's seat belt is not fastened. The engine must be started manually.

M **Error: Start stop**
S **ERROR START-STOP**

A system error is present. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Tyre pressure monitoring

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Save tyre pressure values 119

The tyre pressure monitoring function (hereinafter referred to only as a system) monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

When changing the tyre inflation pressure, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and an audible signal is heard.

Information on the procedure for the notification of change of tyre inflation pressure » page 40.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed inflation pressure and this pressure values are stored in the system.

WARNING

- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility. Tyre pressure should be checked regularly » page 153.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage.

Save tyre pressure values

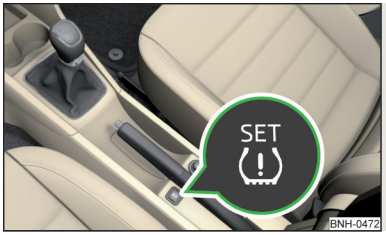


Fig. 110
Key for storing the pressure values

Read and observe ! on page 119 first.

Saving the tyre pressure values is undertaken as follows.

› Inflate all the tyres to the specified pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the symbol key » Fig. 110 and hold.

The warning light in the instrument cluster illuminates.

An acoustic signal and the control indicator provide information about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

› Release the symbol key .

The tyre pressure values are always stored in the system, if one of the following events occurs.
› Change of tyre inflation pressure.
› Change one or more wheels.
› Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
› The warning light in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

Before storing the pressures, the tyres must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 153. When storing incorrect pressure values, the system could possibly not issue any warnings, even with a too low tyre pressure.

CAUTION

The tyre pressure values are to be saved every 10,000 km or once annually to ensure correct system functioning.

Hitch and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description 120
Adjusting the ready position 121
A correctly set ready position 121
Assembling the bar ball - 1. Step 122
Assembling the bar ball - 2. Step 122
Check proper fitting 123
Removing the bar ball - 1. Step 123
Removing the bar ball - 2. Step 123
Accessories 124

The maximum trailer drawbar load is **50 kg**.

WARNING

- Check that the tow bar is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before the start of every journey.
- Do not use the ball head, if it is not correctly inserted into the mounting recess and secured.
- Do not use the towing equipment if it is damaged or incomplete.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing device in any way.
- Never release the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.

CAUTION

- Take care with the ball bar - there is a risk of paint damage to the bumper.
- When the tow bar is removed always place the cover onto the mounting recess - there is a danger of soiling the mounting recess.

Note

- Operation and maintenance of hitch » page 135.
- Tow the vehicle by means of the detachable ball rod » page 169.

Description

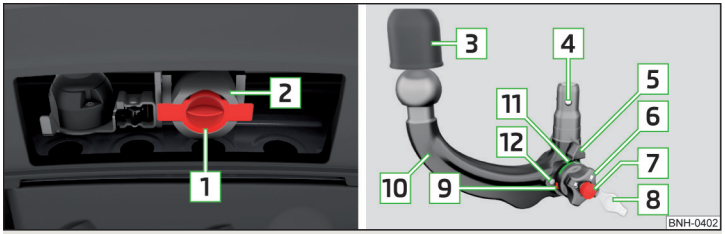


Fig. 111 **Carrier for the towing device / tow bar**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

The ball head can be removed and is kept in the spare wheel well or in a compartment for the spare wheel in the luggage compartment.

Support for the towing device and tow bar » Fig. 111

1 Cap
2 Mounting recess
3 Protective cap
4 Locking ball
5 Centring
6 Hand wheel
7 Key
8 Lock cap
9 Red marking on the hand wheel
10 Ball head
11 Green marking on the hand wheel
12 White marking on ball head

Note

On the bottom of the key is a code number. If you lose a key, please contact a specialist garage which will be able to use this code number to provide you with a new one.

Adjusting the ready position

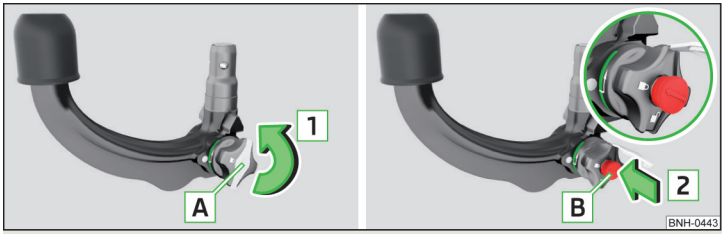


Fig. 112 **Remove cap from the lock / insert key into the lock**

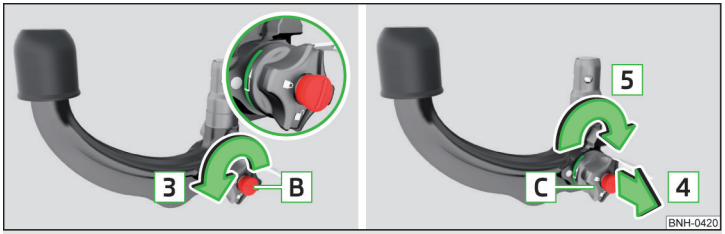


Fig. 113 **Setting the ready position**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

The tow bar must be set prior to installation to the standby position » page 121, *A correctly set ready position*.

If this is not in the ready position, then this must be set to the standby position as follows.

› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 112.
› Insert the key into the lock B in the direction of arrow 2, so that the arrow on the key symbol shows.
› Turn the key B to the stop in the direction of arrow 3, so that the arrow on the key symbol » Fig. 113 shows.
› Pull the hand wheel C in the direction of the arrow 4 and turn in the direction of the arrow 5 to the stop.

The hand wheel C remains locked in this position.

! WARNING

If the tow bar cannot be correctly placed in the ready position, then it must not be used.

A correctly set ready position

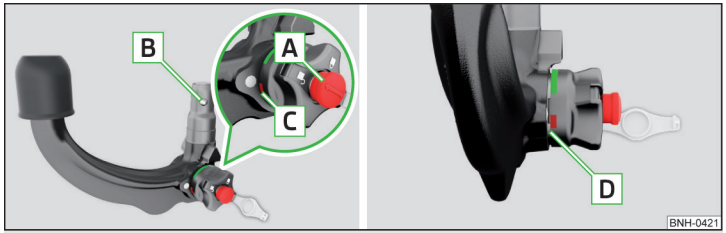


Fig. 114 **Ready position**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 114

✓ The key A is in the unlocked position - the arrow on the key points to the symbol.
✓ The locking ball B can be pushed fully into the tow bar.
✓ The red marking C on the hand wheel points to the white marking on the ball bar.
✓ There is a clear gap of approx. 4 mm D between the hand wheel and the tow bar.

The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

! CAUTION

When in the ready position, the key cannot be removed from the lock.

Assembling the bar ball - 1. Step

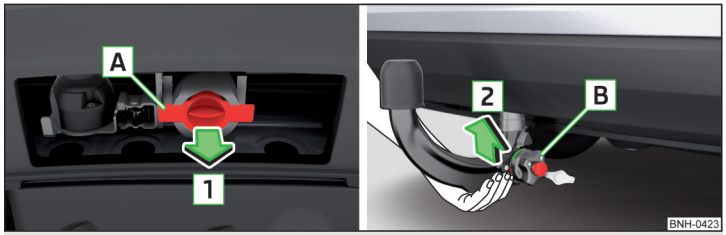


Fig. 115 **Remove cap for receiving shaft / use ball bar**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

Preliminary work

Before installing the tow bar the following work must be carried out.

› Remove the end cap for receiving shaft A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 115.

The tow bar must be set to the standby position » page 121, *A correctly set ready position*. If this is not in the standby position, then it must be set to the standby position » page 121, *Adjusting the ready position*.

Fitting

› Grip the tow bar **from underneath** » Fig. 115 and insert into the mounting recess in arrow direction 2 until you hear it click into place » !.

The hand wheel B rotates back **automatically** and rests on the ball rod » !.

! WARNING

- Do not hold the hand wheel with your hand when attaching the ball bar - there is a risk of finger injury.
- If the tow bar is not in the ready position, it cannot be fitted in the mounting recess.

i Note

Store the cover of the mounting recess in a suitable place in the luggage compartment store after removal.

Assembling the bar ball - 2. Step

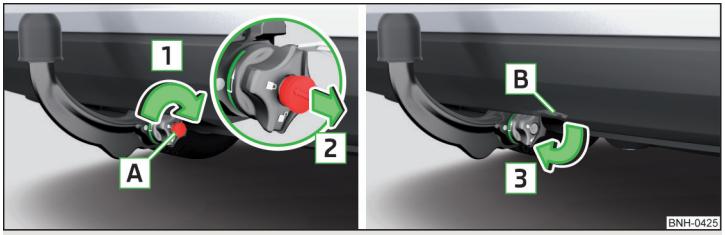


Fig. 116 **Secure the lock and remove key / place cap on lock**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

› Initially carry out the first step of the ball rod assembly » page 122.
› Turn the key A in the direction of arrow 1, so that the arrow on the key symbol 🔒 » Fig. 116 shows.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Fit the cap B on the lock in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Check that the tow bar is securely attached » page 123.

! WARNING

- After fitting the tow bar, always secure the lock and remove the key.
- The tow bar must not be operated with the key inserted.

! CAUTION

After removing the key, **always** replace the cover on the lock – there is a risk of the lock getting dirty.

Check proper fitting

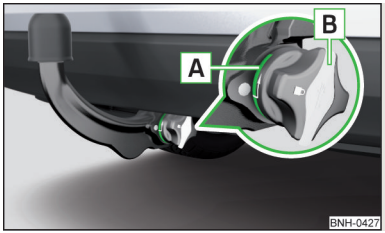


Fig. 117
Correctly secured ball head

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

Check that the tow bar is fitted properly before each use.

Correctly secured ball head » Fig. 117

- ✓ The tow bar does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".
- ✓ The green marking A on the hand wheel points to the white marking on the tow bar.
- ✓ The hand wheel lies flush with the tow bar - there is no gap.
- ✓ The lock is locked and the key is removed.
- ✓ The cap B is on the lock.

! WARNING

Do not use the towing device unless the tow bar has been properly locked!

Removing the bar ball - 1. Step

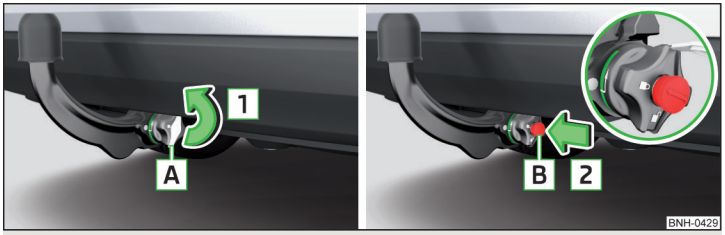


Fig. 118 **Remove cap from the lock / insert key into the lock**

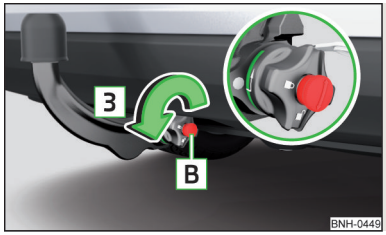


Fig. 119
Unlock lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

› Remove the cover A from the lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 118.
› Insert the key into the lock B in the direction of arrow 2, so that the arrow on the key symbol shows.
› Turn the key B in the direction of arrow 3, so that the arrow on the key symbol » Fig. 119 shows.

! WARNING

Never remove the tow bar while the trailer is still coupled.

i Note

We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the tow bar.

Removing the bar ball - 2. Step

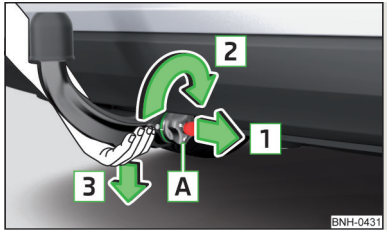


Fig. 120
Release tow bar

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

Removing

› Initially carry out the first step of the ball rod disassembly » page 123.

› Grasp the ball bar from **below** » Fig. 120.
› Pull the hand wheel A in the direction of the arrow 1.
› Turn the hand wheel in the direction of the arrow 2 to the stop, and hold in this position.
› Remove the tow bar from the mounting recess downwards and in the direction of the arrow 3.

At the same time, the ball head latches into the ready position and is thus ready to be re-inserted into the mounting recess » !.

Subsequent steps
After removing the tow bar the following work must be carried out.

› Fit the cover for the mounting recess A in the opposite direction to arrow 1 » Fig. 115 *on page 122*.

! WARNING
Never allow the tow bar to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage on sudden braking and could put the safety of the occupants at risk!

! CAUTION
▪ If the hand wheel A is not turned all the way to the stop, then it will return to its initial position when the tow bar is removed and will rest on the tow bar and not engage into the ready position. The ball head then needs to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted » page 121, *Adjusting the ready position*.
▪ The mounting recess must be closed with the cover following removal. This prevents foreign bodies from getting into the mounting recess.

i Note
Clean any dirt from the tow bar before stowing it away in the box with the vehicle tool kit.

Accessories

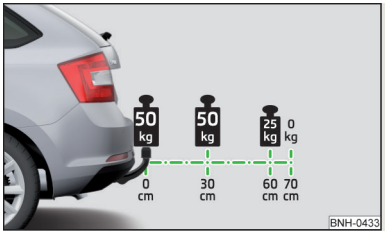


Fig. 121
Representation of the maximum permissible level of the ball head of the towing hitch and the permissible total weight of the accessories including the load depending on the load centre of gravity

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

An accessory can be mounted on the ball head of the towing hitch (e.g. bicycle carrier).

If this accessory is used, the maximum permissible overhang of the ball head of the towing hitch and the permissible gross vehicle weight of the accessories including load are to be checked.

The maximum permissible overhang of the ball head of the towing hitch is **70 cm** » Fig. 121.

The total permitted weight of the accessory including load changes with increasing distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head of the towing hitch.

Distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head	Permissible total weight of the accessory, including load
0 cm	50 kg
30 cm	50 kg
60 cm	25 kg
70 cm	0 kg

! WARNING
▪ Never exceed the permissible gross weight of the accessory including load - there is a risk of damaging the ball head of the towing hitch.
▪ Never exceed the permissible overhang of the ball head of the towing hitch - there is a risk of damaging the ball head of the towing hitch.

Note

We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Trailer

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attaching and detaching trailers ____ 125
Loading a trailer ____ 126
Towing a trailer ____ 126
Anti-theft alarm system ____ 126

If your vehicle has already been factory-fitted with a towing device or is fitted with a towing device from ŠKODA Original Accessories, then it meets all of the technical requirements and national legal regulations for towing a trailer.

Note

If there is an error in the trailer lighting, check the fuses in the fuse box in the dash panel » page 173.

Attaching and detaching trailers

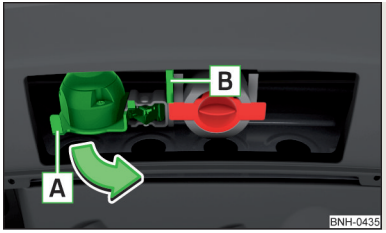


Fig. 122
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket, safety eyelet

Coupling

› Install the tow bar.
› Lift off protective cap 3 » Fig. 111 *on page 120* towards the top.
› Place the trailer onto the ball.
› Grip the 13-pin socket on the handle A and swing out in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 122.
› Insert the trailer cable into the 13-pin socket.

If the trailer that is to be towed has a **7-pin connector**, you can use a suitable adapter from ŠKODA Original Accessories to establish a connection to the electricity.

› Hook the breakaway cable of the trailer to the security lock slot B.

The breakaway cable of the trailer has to **sag** when mounted into the security lock slot for all trailer positions relative to the vehicle (sharp curves, reverse driving and the like).

Uncoupling

The uncoupling of the trailer is carried out in reverse order.

› Unhook the breakaway cable of the trailer from the security lock slot B » Fig. 122.
› Pull the trailer cable out of the 13-pin socket.
› Remove the trailer from the ball head.
› Place the cover 3 on the ball head » Fig. 111 *on page 120*.
› Grip the 13-pin socket on the handle A and swing out against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 122.

Exterior mirrors

You can have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard rear-view mirrors. The national legal requirements must be observed.

Headlights

The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.

Adjust the headlights using the headlight beam control » page 59.

WARNING

- Incorrectly or improperly connected electrical installations may cause malfunction of the entire vehicle electronics and lead to accidents and serious injury from electric shock.
- Works on the electrical system must only be carried out by specialist garages.
- Never directly connect the trailer's electrical system with the electrical connections for the tail lights or other current sources.
- After coupling the trailer and connecting up the power socket, check the rear lights on the trailer to ensure they are working.
- The handbrake on the towing vehicle must be applied when coupling and uncoupling the trailer.
- Never use the safety eyelet for towing!

Loading a trailer

The vehicle/trailer combination must be balanced. Whereby the maximum permissible draw bar load must be utilised. If the draw bar load is too low, it jeopardises the performance of the vehicle/trailer combination.

Distribution of the load
Distribute the load in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the axle as possible. Secure the items from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

Tyre pressure
Correct the tyre inflation pressure on your vehicle for a "full load" » page 153.

Towing capacity and trailer weight
The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances » page 181, *Technical data*.

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The trailer loads specified apply only to altitudes up to 1,000 metres above mean sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1,000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

The trailer and draw bar load information on the type plate of the towing device is merely a test value for the towing device. The vehicle-specific values are detailed in the vehicle documents.

WARNING
- The maximum permissible axle and drawbar load and the permissible weight of the trailer must not exceed - this could cause an accident!
- A sliding cargo can significantly adversely affect stability and driving safety - there is a risk of accident!

Towing a trailer

Driving speed
For safety reasons, do not drive faster than 80 km/h when towing a trailer.

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

Engine overheating
If the needle for the coolant temperature gauge moves into the right-hand area or the red area of the scale, the speed must be reduced immediately.

Stop and switch off the engine if the warning light illuminates or starts to blink in the instrument cluster.

The following guidelines must be observed » page 36.

The coolant temperature level can be reduced by switching on the heating.

WARNING
- Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.
- Adapt your speed to the conditions of the road surface and to the traffic situation.

CAUTION
If you tow a trailer frequently, you should also have your vehicle inspected between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

When the vehicle is locked, the alarm is activated when the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer is coupled or uncoupled » page 53.

Conditions for including a trailer in the anti-theft alarm system.

✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and towing device.

✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.

✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer is functional.

✓ The vehicle is locked with the vehicle key and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.

CAUTION

For technical reasons, trailers with rear LED lights cannot be connected to the anti-theft alarm system.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions 128
Statutory checks 128
ŠKODA Service Partners 129
ŠKODA Original parts 129
ŠKODA Original accessories 129
Spoiler 130
Airbags 130
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 131

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition. After carrying out modifications, repairs or technical alterations, the vehicle will comply with German road transport regulations (StVZO).

Always consult a ŠKODA Partner » page 129before buying accessories or parts, or before carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

WARNING

- Works on your vehicle, which have been carried out unprofessionally, can cause operational faults – risk of accident!
- Interference on the electronic components and their software can lead to operational faults. This interference can also impair not directly affected systems because of the networking of the electronic components. The operational safety of the vehicle may be at significant risk and can lead to increased wear of parts.

For the sake of the environment

Technical documents regarding alterations carried out on the vehicle must be kept by the vehicle user in order to be handed over to the recyclers at a later date. This ensures that the vehicle is recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Note

- We recommend only having these modifications and technical alterations carried out by a specialist garage.
- Any damage caused by technical alterations made without the approval of the manufacturer is excluded from the warranty » *Service schedule*.
- The ŠKODA Partner accepts no liability for products that have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s. even though these may be products with an operational approval or that have been approved by a government testing institute.
- We advise you only to use ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts can be purchased from ŠKODA Partners, who will also perform the professional assembly of the purchased parts.

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 128 first.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with its intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA Partner.

He will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle as well as to prevent damage.

This involves, for example, the coolant, battery replacement and the like.

Statutory checks

Read and observe ! on page 128 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability and road worthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at specific intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorised for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service Partners are up-to-date on the legally required tests and will prepare the vehicle for the tests as part of a service operation if required, or will be responsible for carrying out these tests. The specialist garages can carry out the specified tests directly, if required by the customer, if they are authorised to do so. This saves you time and money.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation of a legally required test, we recommend that you consult the service consultant of your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

Based on their appraisal, the service consultant will tell you which areas you should focus on in order to ensure that your vehicle will pass the technical test without any problems. This allows you to avoid additional expenses resulting from a possible subsequent test.

ŠKODA Service Partners

Read and observe ! on page 128 first.

ŠKODA Service Partners are equipped with modern, specially developed tools and equipment. Here, trained specialists have access to a comprehensive range of ŠKODA Original Parts and ŠKODA Original Accessories for carrying out modifications, repairs and technical alterations.

All ŠKODA service partners operate according to the latest guidelines and instructions from ŠKODA AUTO a.s. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and to the appropriate quality. Adhering to these guidelines and instructions helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

ŠKODA Service Partners are therefore properly prepared to service your vehicle and to provide quality work. We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 128 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO a.s.. They correspond precisely to the ŠKODA AUTO a.s. regulations with regard to design, dimensional accuracy and material, and are identical to the components used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. is able to vouch for the safety, suitability and long service life of these products. We therefore recommend that you only use ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. supplies the market with a complete range of ŠKODA Genuine Parts - not only while the model is still in production but for at least 15 years after the end of series production for wear parts and at least 10 years after the end of series production for all other vehicle parts.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these components for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

Body repairs
ŠKODA vehicles are designed so that if any damage occurs to the body, it is only necessary to replace those parts that are actually damaged.

However, before you decide to have damaged body parts replaced, you should first of all contact your specialist garage to determine whether or not the parts can also be repaired. Repairs to body parts are usually cheaper.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 128 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following.

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch for other products even though in some instances such parts may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

All accessory products are subjected to a challenging process in the areas of technical development (technical testing) and quality inspection (customer testing) and the product only becomes a ŠKODA Genuine Accessory if all tests are passed.

Our ŠKODA Genuine Accessories service also includes expert advice and professional fitting if required by the customer.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements. You should keep the approved warranty certificate and the invoices for these accessories for this period of time, so that the commencement of the term can be verified.

ŠKODA Service Partners also stock a range of suitable car care products and all parts that are subject to natural wear-and-tear, such as tyres, batteries, bulbs and wiper blades.

Note

The accessories authorised by the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. will be offered by the ŠKODA Partners in all countries where the company ŠKODA AUTO a.s. has a sales and after-sales service network. This will usually be in the form of a printed catalogue of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in the form of separate printed brochures or in the form of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories on the ŠKODA Partner websites.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 128 first.

If your new vehicle is fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid, then the following instructions must be adhered to.

› For safety reasons, the vehicle must only be fitted with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the associated spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› This kind of spoiler cannot be left on the front bumper either on its own, in combination with another spoiler not on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
› We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

WARNING

- If work on your vehicle's spoilers is not carried out properly, this can lead to operational faults - risk of accident and serious injuries!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. The front brakes may overheat, which can have a negative impact on the functioning of the braking system – risk of accident!

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 128 first.

The system components of the airbag system can be situated in the front bumper, doors, front seats, roof lining or body.

WARNING

Any work on the airbag system, including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel), must only be carried out by a specialist garage.

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- The airbag system must then be replaced if the airbag has been deployed. Airbag modules cannot be repaired.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- It is prohibited to manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- Never install any airbag parts into the vehicle that have been removed from old cars or have been recycled.
- Never install damaged airbag parts in the vehicle. The airbags may then not be deployed properly or even at all in the event of an accident.
- No modifications of any kind may be made to parts of the airbag system.

WARNING

- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tyre combinations, can alter the functioning of the airbag system - risk of accident and fatal injury!
- Never make any changes to the front bumper or the bodywork.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

Read and observe ! on page 128 first.

ŠKODA meets the requirements of the brand and its products with regard to protecting the environment and the preserving resources. All new ŠKODAvehicles can be recycled by up to 95 % and can always [1]be returned free of charge.

In a lot of countries sufficient trade-in networks have been created, where you can trade-in your vehicle. After you trade-in your vehicle, you will receive a confirmation documenting the recycling in accordance with environmental regulations.

Note

You can find more detailed information about the trade-in and recycling of old cars from a specialist garage.

Washing vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Washing by hand 131
Automatic car wash systems 132
Washing with a high-pressure cleaner 132

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is **frequent** washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, tree sap, road and industrial dust, tar, soot particles, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain adhering to the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is essential to also thoroughly clean the **underside of the vehicle** at the end of the winter.

WARNING

When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!

CAUTION

The temperature of the water used for cleaning must not exceed 60 °C – risk of damaging the vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle at washing bays intended for this purpose.

Washing by hand

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

Soak the dirt with plenty of water and rinse as well as possible.

Clean the vehicle with a soft **sponge**, a **washing glove** or a washing brush. Work from the top to the bottom – starting with the roof.

For stubborn dirt, agents specifically intended for this purpose are to be used.

Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

Clean wheels, door sills and similar parts last. Use a second sponge for such areas.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

WARNING

Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor or the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

CAUTION

- Only apply slight pressure when cleaning the vehicle's paintwork.
- Do not wash your vehicle in bright sunlight – risk of paint damage.

[1] Subject to fulfilment of the national legal requirements.

Automatic car wash systems

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system (e.g. closing the windows and the sliding/tilting roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts, such as a spoiler, roof rack system, two-way radio aerial etc., it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the lips of the wipers should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

! CAUTION

Fold in the exterior mirrors to prevent damage before washing the vehicle in an automatic car wash system. Never manually fold in electric exterior mirrors - always use the electric controls.

Washing with a high-pressure cleaner

Read and observe ! and ! on page 131 first.

When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This applies in particular to the **pressure** used and to the **spraying distance**.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material.

! CAUTION

- If washing the vehicle in the winter using a hose or high-pressure cleaner, ensure that the jet of water is not aimed directly at the locking cylinders or the door/panel joints – risk of freezing!
- To avoid damaging the parking aid sensors while cleaning with high-pressure cleaners or steam jets, the sensors must only be directly sprayed for short periods while a minimum distance of 10 cm must be observed.

i Note

Also refer to "Washing cars with decorative films using a high-pressure cleaner" » page 134.

Cleaning vehicle exterior

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle paint work 133
Plastic parts 133
Rubber seals 133
Chrome parts 133
Decorative films 134
Windows and external mirrors 134
Headlight glasses 134
Door closing cylinder 135
Cavity protection 135
Jack 135
Wheels 135
Towing device and mounting recess 135
Under-body protection 135
Wiper blades 136

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

! WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Protect your hands and arms from sharp-edged metal parts when cleaning the underfloor, the inside of the wheel housings or the wheel trims – risk of cuts!

! CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Cleaners that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of your vehicle's exterior, we recommend that the cleaning and care of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

Vehicle paint work

Read and observe and on page 132 first.

Preserving the vehicle paintwork

A thorough wax treatment provides the vehicle's paintwork with highly effective protection against harmful environmental influences.

The vehicle must be treated with a high-quality hard wax polish at the latest, when no more drops form on the clean paintwork.

A new layer of a high-quality hard wax polish can be applied to the clean bodywork after it has dried thoroughly.

Even if you use a wax preserver regularly, we still recommend that you treat the paintwork of the vehicle at least twice a year with hard wax.

Polishing

Polishing is necessary if the vehicle's paintwork has become unattractive and if it is no longer possible to achieve a gloss with wax preservatives.

If the polish does not contain any preserving elements, the paint must be treated with a preservative afterwards.

CAUTION

- Paint damage is to be repaired immediately.
- Never apply wax to the windows.
- Mat painted or plastic parts must not be treated with polishing products or hard waxes.
- Do not polish the paintwork in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
- Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- If possible, do not apply any paint care products to parts of the bodywork that come into contact with door seals or window guides.

Plastic parts

Read and observe and on page 132 first.

Clean plastic parts with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the plastic parts, use cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

CAUTION

Do not use paint care products on plastic parts.

Rubber seals

Read and observe and on page 132 first.

All door seals and window guides are factory-treated with a colourless matt varnish layer to prevent the freezing of painted body parts and to protect against driving noise.

CAUTION

- Do not treat the door seals and window guides with any products **whatsoever**.
- Applying additional treatments to the seals can corrode the protective coating, and driving noise may occur.

Chrome parts

Read and observe and on page 132 first.

First clean the chrome parts with a damp cloth and then polish them with a soft, dry cloth.

If this method does not completely clean chrome parts, use a specific chrome care product.

CAUTION

Do not polish the chrome parts in a dusty environment - risk of surface scratches.

Decorative films

Read and observe ! and ! on page 132 first.

Wash the films with a mild soap solution and clean, warm water.

The following instructions must be followed when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner.

› The minimum distance between the nozzle and the vehicle body should be 50 cm.
› Keep the jet perpendicular to the film surface.
› The maximum water temperature is 50 °C.
› The maximum water pressure is 80 bar.

! CAUTION

▪ Never use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents for the glued surfaces with films - there is a danger of film damage.
▪ In the winter months, do not use an ice scraper to remove ice and snow from the areas with films. Do not use any other objects to remove frozen layers of snow or ice – risk of film damage.

Windows and external mirrors

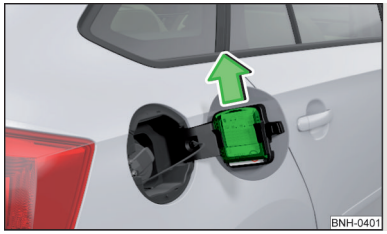


Fig. 123
Fuel filler flap: Remove ice scraper

Read and observe ! and ! on page 132 first.

Removing snow and ice
Use a plastic ice scraper for removing snow and ice from the windows and mirrors.

The ice scraper can be found on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

› Open the fuel filler flap.
› Slide out the ice scraper in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 123.

Cleaning windows
Regularly clean windows from the inside with clean water.

Dry the glass surfaces with a clean chamois leather or a cloth intended for this purpose.

! CAUTION

Instructions for removing snow and ice
▪ The ice scraper should not be moved forward and backward but in one direction to avoid any damage to the surface of the glass.
▪ Snow or ice that is contaminated with coarse dirt such as fine gravel, sand or salt must not be removed from the windows and mirrors – there is a risk of damage to the surface of the windows and mirrors.
▪ Do not remove snow or ice from glass parts using warm or hot water – risk of cracks forming in the glass.
▪ Make sure that when removing snow and ice from the windows, the labels attached to the vehicle by the factory are not damaged.

! CAUTION

Information for cleaning windows
▪ Do not clean the inside of the windows with sharp-edged objects or corrosive and acidic cleaning agents – there is a risk of damaging the heating elements or window aerial.
▪ When drying the windows after washing the vehicle, do not use window leathers that have been used to polish the bodywork. Residues of preservatives in the window leather can make the window dirty and reduce visibility.

Headlight glasses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 132 first.

Clean plastic front headlight lenses using clean, warm water and soap.

! CAUTION

▪ The headlights are **never** to be wiped dry - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glass subsequently developing cracks.
▪ Do not use sharp objects to clean the glasses - there is a risk of damaging the protective lacquer and the headlight glasses subsequently developing cracks.
▪ Do not use any aggressive cleaning or chemical solvent products to clean the headlights – risk of damaging the headlight lenses.

Door closing cylinder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 132 first.

Specific products must be used for de-icing door lock cylinders.

! CAUTION

Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!

Cavity protection

Read and observe ! and ! on page 132 first.

All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected for life by a layer of **protective wax** applied in the factory.

This wax protection does not need to be inspected or re-applied.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

! WARNING

Safety regulations should be observed when using petroleum cleaner to remove wax – risk of fire!

Jack

Read and observe ! and ! on page 132 first.

The jack is maintenance-free.

If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

Wheels

Read and observe ! and ! on page 132 first.

Wheel rims

Also thoroughly wash the wheel rims when washing the vehicle on a regular basis.

Regularly remove salt and brake abrasion, otherwise the rim material will be corroded.

Light alloy wheels

After washing thoroughly, treat the wheel rims with a protective product for light alloy wheels.

For the treatment of wheel rims do not use products which may cause damage to the paint on the rims.

! CAUTION

- Damage to the paint layer on the wheel rims must be touched up immediately.
- Severe layers of dirt on the wheels can also result in wheel imbalance. This may show itself in the form of a wheel vibration which is transmitted to the steering wheel which, in certain circumstances, can cause premature wear of the steering. This means it is necessary to remove the dirt.

Towing device and mounting recess

Read and observe ! and ! on page 132 first.

Close the mounting recess with the cover to prevent any dirt from getting in.

If dirt is present, clean the inner surfaces of the mounting recess and treat with a suitable preservative.

Always check the ball head before hitching a trailer. Apply a suitable grease, if necessary.

Use the protective cover when stowing away the tow bar, in order to stop the boot from getting dirty.

! CAUTION

Apply grease to the inner part of the mounting recess. Make sure you do not remove any grease.

Under-body protection

Read and observe ! and ! on page 132 first.

The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

It is not possible to guarantee that the **protective coating** will not suffer any damage as the vehicle is driven.

We recommend having the protective coating underneath the vehicle and the chassis checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

WARNING

Never use additional under-body protection or anti-corrosion agents for exhaust pipes, catalytic converters, diesel particle filters or heat shields. When the engine reaches its operating temperature, these substances may ignite - risk of fire!

Wiper blades

Read and observe and on page 132 first.

Clean the wiper blades regularly with a glass cleaner. The wiper blades should be cleaned with a sponge or cloth if they are heavily soiled by insect residues, for example.

The wiper blades can become soiled with wax residues after washing in automatic vehicle wash systems for example » page 132.

Interior care

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Natural leather 136
Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara® 137
Seat covers 138
Safety belts 138

We recommend using vehicle care products from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These are available from ŠKODA Partners. The usage instructions on the package must be observed.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

CAUTION

- Be sure to check clothing for colour fastness to avoid any damage or visible stains on the material (leather), panels and textiles.
- Remove fresh stains such as those from ball-point pens, ink, lipstick, shoe polish, etc., from the material (leather), panels and textiles as quickly as possible.
- Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dash panel – there is a risk of damage to the dash panel.
- Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
- Cleaners that contain solvents can damage the material being cleaned.
- Apply only a small amount of the cleaning and care product.

For the sake of the environment

Used vehicle care product cans represent hazardous waste that is harmful to the environment. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

Due to the special tools and knowledge required, and to avoid any potential problems with the cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle, we recommend that cleaning and care of the interior of your vehicle be carried out by a ŠKODA service partner.

Natural leather

Read and observe and on page 136 first.

The leather needs, depending on the strain placed on it, regular cleaning and maintenance.

Dust and dirt in pores and creases cause abrasions on the surface and lead to premature brittling of the leather surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Clean soiled leather surfaces with a water-dampened cotton or woollen cloth and then dry with a clean, dry cloth » !.

Clean **severely soiled areas** with a cloth soaked in a mild soap solution (2 tablespoons of neutral soap to 1 litre of water).

To **remove stains**, use a cleaning agent specially designed for this purpose.

Treat the leather periodically with a suitable leather protector and use a skin care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams! Otherwise, the leather could become brittle or cracked.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle for lengthy periods in bright sunlight to avoid bleaching the leather. If the vehicle is parked in the open for lengthy periods, protect the leather from direct sunlight by covering it.
- The use of an additional mechanical steering wheel lock may damage the leather surface of the steering wheel.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.
- Sharp-edged objects on items of clothing such as zip fasteners, rivets, sharp-edged belts etc. may leave permanent scratches or signs of rubbing on the surface or damage these. Such damage cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

i Note

When using the vehicle, minor visible changes may occur to the leather parts of the covers (e.g. wrinkles or creases) as a result of the stress applied to the covers.

Artificial leather, materials and Alcantara®

Read and observe ! and ! on page 136 first.

Artificial leather

Clean artificial leather with a damp cloth.

If this method does not completely clean the artificial leather, use a mild soap solution or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Fabric

Clean upholstery cover materials and cloth trims on doors, boot cover, etc. using specific cleaning agents, e.g., dry foam.

Use a soft sponge, brush, or commercially available microfibre cloth.

Use a cloth and a cleaning agent specifically designed for this purpose to clean the roof trim.

Remove any lumps on the cover fabric and any fabric residue using a brush.

Remove stubborn hair using a “cleaning glove”.

Alcantara®

Dust and dirt in pores, creases and seams may chafe and damage the surface. Therefore, they must be removed **regularly at short intervals** with a cloth or vacuum cleaner.

Minor changes in colour caused by use are normal.

! CAUTION

- For Alcantara® seat covers, do not use any solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover, leather cleaners or similar agents.
- Avoid leaving the vehicle in bright sunlight for long periods of time in order to stop the artificial leather, materials or Alcantara® from bleaching. During extended periods of standing outdoors, protect artificial leather, fabrics or Alcantara® by covering.
- Some clothing materials, e.g. dark denim, do not have sufficient colour fastness. This can cause damage or clearly visible discolouration to seat covers, even when used correctly. This applies particularly to light-coloured seat covers. This does not relate to a fault in the seat cover, but rather to poor colour fastness of the clothing textiles.

Seat covers

Read and observe ! and ! on page 136 first.

Electrically heated seats
Use a specific cleaning agent for cleaning the covers e.g. dry foam among others » !.

Seats without seat heating
Thoroughly vacuum the seat covers with a vacuum cleaner before cleaning.

Clean the seat covers with a damp cloth or cleaning products specially designed for this purpose.

Indented points arising on the fabrics by everyday use, can be removed by brushing against the direction of hair with a damp brush.

Always clean all parts of the covers, so that there are no visible edges. Then allow the seat to dry completely.

! CAUTION
- Do not clean the covers of electrically heated seats either with water or with other liquids - there is a risk of damaging the seat heating system.
- Regularly remove dust from the seat covers using a vacuum cleaner.
- Electrically heated seats must not be dried after cleaning by switching on the heater.
- Do not sit on wet seats - risk of seat deformation.
- Always clean the seats "from seam to seam".

Safety belts

Read and observe ! and ! on page 136 first.

Wash dirty seat belts with mild soapy water.

Remove coarse dirt with a soft brush.

! WARNING
- The seat belts must not be removed for cleaning.
- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- The seat belts must not be allowed to come into contact with corrosive liquids (e.g. acids).
- The seat belts must be fully dried before being rolled up.

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Refuelling 139
Lead-free petrol 139
Diesel fuel 140

The correct fuel grades for your vehicle are specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap » Fig. 124 *on page 139*.

! CAUTION
- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! The irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage!
- If the vehicle was not purchased in the country where it was intended to be operated, you should check whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in the country where the vehicle will be operated. You should also perhaps check whether the manufacturer has recommended a different fuel for operation of the vehicle in the corresponding country. If no prescribed fuel is available, then you must check whether it is permitted by the manufacturer to operate the vehicle with another fuel type.

Refuelling

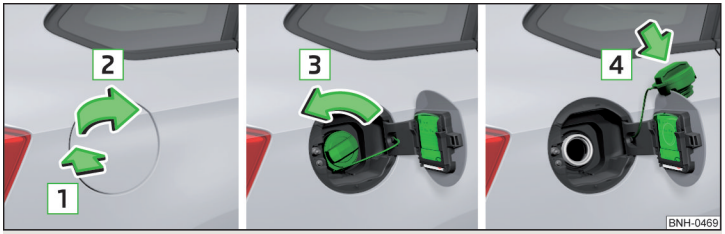


Fig. 124 **Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

Read and observe ! on page 138 first.

Refuelling can be done if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.

✓ The engine and the ignition are switched off.

› Press on the fuel filler flap in the direction of the arrow 1 accordingly » Fig. 124.

› Open the flap in the direction of the arrow 2.

› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of the arrow 3.

› Remove the tank cap and place on top of the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 4.

› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go » !.

The fuel tank is full just as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time » !.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.

› Screw in the tank cap in the opposite direction of the arrow 3 until it audibly clicks into place.

› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Check that the fuel filler flap is closed properly.

! WARNING

- Do not smoke when refuelling and do not use a mobile phone.
- The fuel and fuel vapours are explosive - it can be fatal!
- Observe the local regulations regarding fuel handling.

! WARNING

Instructions for filling the reserve canister

- Never fill the reserve can inside the vehicle.
- Never place the reserve can on the vehicle.
- Always place the reserve can on the floor.
- The national legal requirements must be observed if carrying a spare canister in the vehicle.
- We do not recommend carrying any fuel canisters in your vehicle for safety reasons. In the event of an accident, these canisters can become damaged and fuel may escape – risk of fire!

! CAUTION

- The fuel tank is full as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time, provided the nozzle has been operated properly. Do not continue refuelling.
- Be careful when filling diesel fuel from the spare canister and then do this slowly and cautiously – danger of contaminating the body.

i Note

The fuel tank has a capacity of about **55 litres**, containing a reserve of approx. **7 litres**.

Lead-free petrol

Read and observe ! on page 138 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **unleaded petrol** that meets the **EN 228**[1] standard.

All petrol engines can be operated using petrol that contains at **most** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 and/or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

Required fuel - unleaded petrol 95/91 and/or 92 and/or 93 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON. Unleaded petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** and/or **93** RON can also be used, but may result in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption » !.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol min. 95 RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **95** RON or higher.

If unleaded gasoline is not available with the octane number **95** RON, in an emergency petrol with the octane rating of **91, 92** and/or **93** RON can be used to fill the tank, but this leads to a slight loss of performance and a slightly increased fuel consumption » !.

Prescribed fuel – unleaded petrol 98/(95) RON
Use unleaded fuel with the octane rating **98** RON or higher. Unleaded petrol **95** RON can also be used but this results in a slight loss in performance and slightly increased fuel consumption.

In case of an emergency, you can refuel with petrol with the octane ratings **91, 92** and/or **93** RON, if unleaded fuel with octane rating **98** RON or **95** RON is not available » !.

Fuel additives
Unleaded petrol in accordance with the EN 228 standard[1)] meets all the conditions for a smooth-running engine. We therefore recommend that no fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

! CAUTION
- Even one filling of the tank with petrol that does not meet the standards can lead to serious damage to parts of the exhaust system!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is used by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur!

! CAUTION
- If, in an emergency, the vehicle has to be refuelled with petrol of a lower octane content than the one prescribed, the journey must only be continued at medium engine speeds and a low engine load. Driving at high engine revs or a high engine load can severely damage the engine! Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- Engine parts can be damaged if petrol with a lower octane number than the one prescribed is used.
- Even in the event of an emergency, petrol of a lower octane number than **91** RON must not be used, otherwise the engine can be severely damaged!

! CAUTION
In no case may fuel additives with metal components be used, especially not with manganese and iron content. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!

! CAUTION
Do not use fuels with metal components, such as LRP (lead replacement petrol) **may be used. There is a risk of causing considerable damage to parts of the engine or exhaust system!**

i Note
- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 and/or 93** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.
- On vehicles using prescribed unleaded petrol of **min. 95** RON, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** RON can increase the power and reduce fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

Read and observe ! on page 138 first.

The vehicle can only be operated with **diesel fuel** that meets the **EN 590**[2)] standard.

[1)] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 and/or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.
[2)] In Germany also DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590:2004.

All diesel engines can be operated using diesel fuel with at **most** 7% bio-diesel **(B7)**[1].

Operation in winter – Winter-grade diesel fuel
In the cold season, only use "winter-grade diesel fuel" which will still operate properly even at a temperature of -20 °C.

It is often the case in countries with different climatic conditions that diesel fuels available have a different temperature characteristic. ŠKODA Partners and filling stations in the relevant country will be able to provide you with information regarding the diesel fuels available.

Diesel fuel additives
The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. We therefore recommend that no diesel fuel additives are used. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system.

CAUTION
- Just filling the tank once with diesel fuel that does not comply with the standard can cause severe damage to parts of the engine, the fuel and exhaust system!
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is used, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition! Extensive damage to engine parts can occur!
- Water which has collected in the fuel filter can cause engine faults.

CAUTION
- The vehicle cannot be operated with biofuel **RME**, therefore this fuel must not be filled in the tank and used for driving the vehicle. The use of biofuel **RME** can cause considerable damage to parts of the engine or fuel system.
- Do not mix any fuel additives, so-called "flow improvers" (petrol and similar agents) into the diesel. This can result in considerable damage to parts of the engine or the exhaust system!

[1] In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet 142
Engine compartment overview 143
Radiator fan 143
Windscreen washer system 143

WARNING
Injuries or scolding or risks of accident or fire may occur when working in the engine compartment. For this reason, it is essential to comply with the warning instructions outlined below and with the general applicable safety rules. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

WARNING
Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment
- Turn off the engine and withdraw the ignition key.
- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with manual transmission the lever into the neutral position.
- On vehicles with automatic transmission, shift the selector lever into the **P** position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment – risk of scalding! Wait until no more steam or coolant is escaping.

WARNING
Information for working in the engine compartment
- Keep all people, especially children, away from the engine compartment.
- Never touch the radiator fan while the engine is still warm. The fan might suddenly start running!
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running
- Pay particular attention to moving engine parts, e.g. V-ribbed belt, generator, radiator fan - danger to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system – particularly on the vehicle's battery.
- Always make sure that no jewellery, loose clothing or long hair can get caught in rotating engine parts – risk to life! Always remove any jewellery, tie back long hair and wear tight fitting clothing before completing any work.

WARNING

Information for working on the fuel system or the electrical system
- Always disconnect the vehicle battery from the electrical system.
- Do not smoke.
- Never work near open flames.
- Always have a functioning fire extinguisher nearby.

WARNING

- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.
- Keep the working fluids in sealed original containers and safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.
- If you intend to work underneath the vehicle, you must secure the vehicle from rolling away and support it with suitable supporting blocks; the car jack is not sufficient – risk of injury!

CAUTION

Always top up using the correct specification of fluids. This may result in major operating problems and also vehicle damage!

For the sake of the environment

In view of the requirements for the environmentally friendly disposal of fluids and the special tools and knowledge required for such work, we recommend that fluids be changed by a specialist garage.

Note

- Please consult a specialist garage for any questions relating to fluids.
- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.

Opening and closing the bonnet

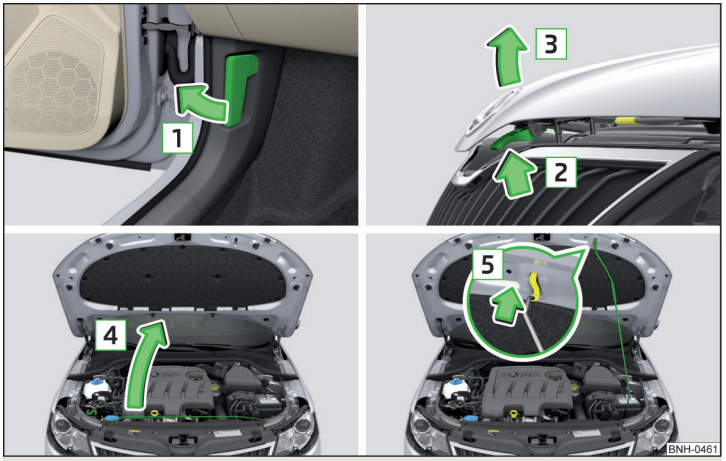


Fig. 125 **Opening the bonnet**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

Open flap

› Open the front door.
› Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 125.

Before opening the bonnet, ensure that the arms of the windscreen wipers are correctly in place against the windscreen, otherwise the paintwork on the flap could be damaged.

› Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2.

The flap is then unlocked.

› Grasp the bonnet catch and lift in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow 4 from the holder.
› Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow 5.

Close the flap

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› Let the bonnet drop into the lock carrier lock from a height of around 20 cm – do **not push it in**!

WARNING

- Check that the bonnet is closed properly.
- If you notice that the lock is not properly engaged while driving, stop the vehicle immediately and close the flap – risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the bonnet, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

CAUTION

Never open the bonnet by the locking lever » Fig. 125.

Engine compartment overview

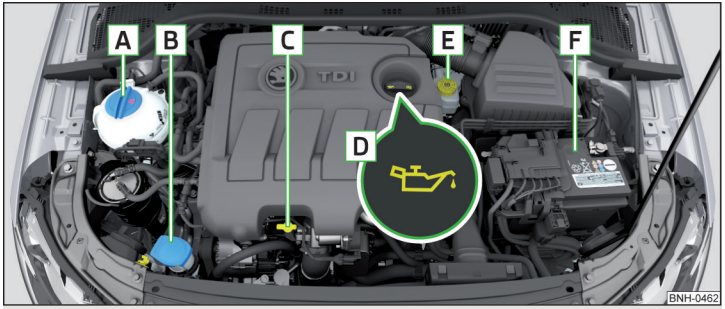


Fig. 126 **Principle sketch: Engine compartment**

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

Arrangement in the engine compartment » Fig. 126

A	Coolant expansion reservoir	147
B	Windscreen washer fluid reservoir	143
C	Engine oil dipstick	145
D	Engine oil filler opening	146
E	Brake fluid reservoir	148
F	Vehicle battery	148

Note

The location of the inspection points in the engine compartment of petrol and diesel engines is practically identical.

Radiator fan

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

The radiator fan is powered by an electric motor. Operation is controlled according to the temperature of the coolant.

WARNING

After switching off the ignition, the fan may intermittently continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Windscreen washer system

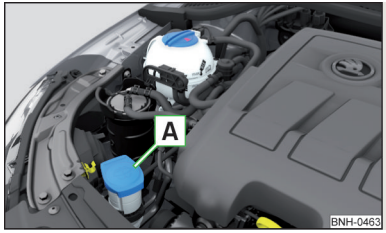


Fig. 127
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe and on page 141 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir A is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 127.

The cleaning fluid is provided for the cleaning of the front and rear window as well as the headlight.

The capacity of the reservoir is about 3.5 litres or about 5.4 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system[1].

Clear water is not sufficient to intensively clean the windscreen and headlights. We recommend using clean water together with a screen cleaner from the range of ŠKODA Original Accessories **(with anti-freeze in winter)**, which will remove any stubborn dirt.

In Winter, the washing water should always be mixed with anti-freeze even if the vehicle has heated windscreen washer nozzles.

Under exceptional circumstances, methylated spirits can also be used if no screen cleaner with anti-freeze is available. The concentration of methylated spirits must not be more than 15 %. The anti-freeze protection at this concentration is sufficient only to -5 °C.

CAUTION

- Under no circumstances must radiator anti-freeze or other additives be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- If the vehicle is fitted with a headlight cleaning system, only cleaning products which do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights must be added to the windscreen washer fluid.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when refilling, as this may cause contamination of the liquid transportation system, leading in turn to a windscreen washer system malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specification ____ 144
Checking the oil level ____ 145
Replenishing ____ 146

The engine has been factory-filled with a high-grade oil that can be use throughout the year - except in extreme climate zones.

The engine oils are undergoing continuous further development. Thus the information stated in this Owner's Manual is only correct at the time of publication.

ŠKODA Service Partners are informed about the latest changes by the manufacturer. We therefore recommend that the oil change be completed by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

The engine oil should be changed after specified service intervals » page 47.

WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 141.

CAUTION

Do not pour any additives into the engine oil – risk of serious damage to the engine parts!

Note

- Before a long drive we recommend that you purchase and carry with you engine oil which complies with the specification for your vehicle.
- We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- If your skin has come into contact with oil, it must be washed thoroughly.

Specification

Read and observe ! and ! on page 144 first.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 litres/55 kW	VW 503 00, VW 504 00
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	VW 504 00
1.2 l/77 kW TSI	VW 504 00
1.4 l/90 kW TSI	VW 503 00, VW 504 00

[1] In some countries, 5.4 l. applies for both variants.

Diesel engine[a)]	Specification
1.6 l/66, 77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00

[a)] Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 litres/55 kW	VW 501 01, VW 502 00
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.2 l/77 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.4 l/90 kW TSI	VW 501 01, VW 502 00
1.6 litres/77 kW	VW 501 01, VW 502 00

Diesel engine[a)]	Specification
1.6 l/66, 77 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00

[a)] Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

CAUTION

- If the above engine oils are not available, a different engine oil can be used in an emergency. To prevent damage to the engine, a **maximum of 0.5 litres** only of the following engine oils may be used:
  - For petrol engine models: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
  - for diesel engine models: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Checking the oil level

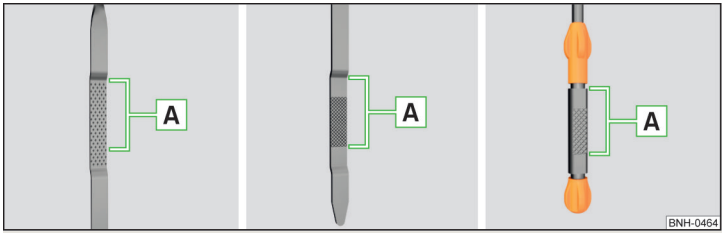


Fig. 128 **Principle sketch: Dipstick**

Read and observe and on page 144 first.

The dipstick indicates the engine oil level .

Dipstick » Fig. 128

A The oil level must be within this range.

The oil can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

- ✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
- ✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
- ✓ The engine is turned off.
- ✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

- › Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.
- › Pull out the dipstick.
- › Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth and insert it again to the stop.
- › Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.
- › Re-insert the dipstick.

The engine consumes a little oil. The oil consumption may be as much as 0.5 l/ 1 000 km depending on your style of driving and the conditions under which you operate your vehicle. Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

The oil level must be checked at regular intervals.

In case of low oil level, the display of the instrument cluster shows a check mark as well as the relevant notification » page 36. Check the oil level using the dipstick as soon as possible. Add oil accordingly.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never be above the range A» Fig. 128 - risk of damage to the motor as well as the exhaust system!
- Do not continue if for some reason it is not possible to fill with engine oil under the current circumstances! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the oil level is above the range A, do not continue to drive! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 144 first.

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening » Fig. 126 *on page 143*.
› Replenish the oil in portions of 0.5 litres in accordance with the correct specifications » page 144.
› Check the oil level » page 145.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.
› Pull the dipstick out as far as the stop.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the coolant level 147
Replenishing 147

The coolant provides cooling for the motor.

It consists of water and coolant additive with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevents furring.

The coolant additive level in the coolant must be at least 40%.

The coolant additive may be increased to a maximum of 60%.

The correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive is to be checked if necessary by a specialist garage or is to be restored if necessary.

The description of the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 129 *on page 147*.

! WARNING

The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 141.
- The coolant is harmful to health.
- Avoid contact with the coolant.
- Coolant vapours are harmful to health.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurised!

! WARNING (Continued)

- When opening the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir, cover it with a cloth to protect your face, hands and arms from hot steam or hot coolant.
- If any coolant splashes into your eyes, immediately rinse out your eyes with clear water and contact a doctor as soon as possible.
- Always keep the coolant in the original container, safe from people who are not completely independent, especially children - there is a danger of poisoning!
- If coolant is swallowed, consult a doctor immediately.
- Never spill operating fluids over the hot engine - risk of fire.

! CAUTION

- Do not continue if for some reason it is not possible to fill with coolant under the current circumstances! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- If the expansion tank is empty, do not top up with coolant. The system could ventilate - there is a risk of engine damage, not continue! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- The concentration of coolant additive in the coolant must never be under 40%.
- Over 60% of coolant additive in the coolant reduces the antifreeze protection and cooling effect.
- A coolant additive that does not comply with the correct specification can significantly reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.
- Any faults resulting from corrosion may cause a loss of coolant and can consequently result in major engine damage!
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A.» Fig. 129 *on page 147*
- If an error occurs, leading to the engine overheating, the help of a professional garage is to be sought - there is a risk of serious engine damage occurring.
- Additional headlights and other attached components in front of the air inlet impair the cooling efficiency of the coolant.
- Never cover the radiator - there is a risk of the engine overheating.

Checking the coolant level

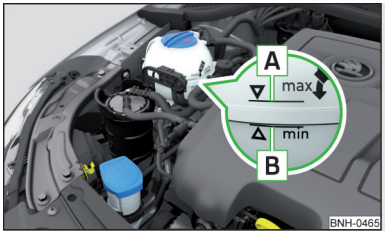


Fig. 129
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 146 first.

The coolant expansion bottle is located in the engine compartment.

Coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 129

A Mark for **the maximum** permissible coolant level
B Mark for the **lowest** permissible coolant level

The coolant level should be kept between the marks A and B.

The coolant can be checked and topped up, if the following conditions are satisfied.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The engine is not heated.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank » Fig. 129.

If the engine is warm, the test result may be inaccurate. The level can also be above the mark A » Fig. 129.

In case of low coolant level, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster as well as the relevant notification » page 36 in the instrument cluster. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Loss of coolant

A loss of coolant is first and foremost an **indication of a leak** in the cooling system. Do not merely top up the coolant. Have the cooling system checked by a specialist garage.

Replenishing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 146 first.

The coolant expansion tank must always contain a small amount of coolant » page 146, ! in section *Introduction*.

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
› Replenishing the coolant.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

! CAUTION

- Only top up with new coolant.
- Do not use an alternative additive if the specified coolant is not available. In this case, use just water and have the correct mixing ratio of water and coolant additive restored by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Brake fluid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking the brake fluid level 148
Specification 148

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 130 *on page 148*.

! WARNING

- The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 141.
- Do not use used brake fluid - the function of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

! CAUTION

- Do not continue your journey if the fluid level has dropped below the "MIN" marking » Fig. 130 *on page 148*, do not continue to drive - risk of accidents! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- Brake fluid damages the paintwork of the vehicle.

Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.
- We recommend using brake fluids from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range.

Checking the brake fluid level



Fig. 130
Brake fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 147 first.

The fluid can be checked if the following conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

Checking the level

› Check the level of brake fluid in the reservoir » Fig. 130.

The level must be between the "MIN" and "MAX" markings.

A slight drop in the fluid level results when driving due to normal wear-and-tear and automatic adjustment of the brake pads.

There may be an indication of a leak in the brake system, however, if the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" marking.

Too low brake fluid level is indicated by the warning light lighting up in the instrument cluster as well as the relevant notification being displayed » page 35, *Brake system*.

Specification

Read and observe ! and ! on page 147 first.

The brake fluid must comply with the following standards or specifications:

› VW 50114;
› FMVSS 116 DOT4.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening the cover 149
Checking the battery electrolyte level 150
Charging 150
Replacing 151
Disconnecting and reconnecting 151
Automatic load deactivation 151

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection!
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection!
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery!
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery!

WARNING

There is risk of injuries, poisoning, chemical burns, explosions or fire when working on the battery and on the electrical system. It is essential to comply with the general applicable safety rules as well as the warning instructions outlined below.

- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent, especially children.
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings. Protect your eyes by wearing safety goggles or a face shield – risk of blindness!
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- The battery acid is strongly corrosive and must, therefore, be handled with the greatest of care.
- Corrosive fumes in the air irritate the air passages and lead to conjunctivitis and inflammation of the air passages in the lungs.
- Battery acid corrodes dental enamel and, if it comes into contact with the skin, causes deep wounds that take a long time to heal.
- If any battery acid comes into contact with your eyes, rinse the affected eye immediately with clean water for several minutes and consult a doctor immediately!
- Splashes of acid on your skin or clothes should be neutralised as soon as possible using soap suds and then rinsed with plenty of water.
- If you swallow battery acid, consult a doctor immediately!

WARNING

- The use of open flames and light should be avoided.
- Smoking and radio triggering activities should be avoided.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery – risk of explosion!
- Never charge a frozen or thawed vehicle battery – risk of explosion and chemical burns!
- Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.

CAUTION

- Improper handling of the vehicle battery may cause damage.
- Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – risk of damage to the paintwork.
- If the vehicle has not been driven for more than 3-4 weeks, the battery will discharge. Prevent the battery from discharging by disconnecting the battery's negative terminal ⊖ or continuously charging the battery with a very low charging current.
- Do not place the battery in direct daylight in order to protect the vehicle battery housing from the effects of ultra-violet light.
- If the vehicle is frequently used for making short trips, the vehicle battery will not have time to charge up sufficiently and may discharge.

For the sake of the environment

A vehicle battery that has been removed is a special type of hazardous waste. Therefore these must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Opening the cover

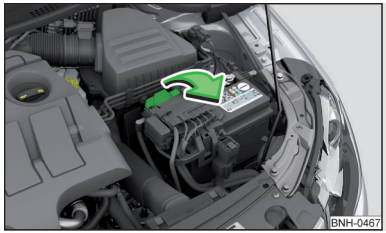


Fig. 131
Battery cover

Read and observe ! and ! on page 149 first.

The battery is located in the engine compartment.

› Open the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 131.

The battery cover is installed in reverse order.

Checking the battery electrolyte level

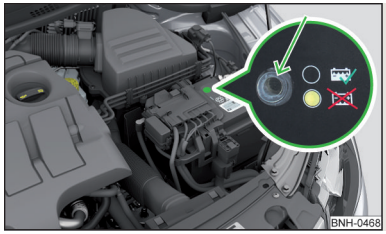


Fig. 132
Electrolyte level indicator

Read and observe ! and ! on page 149 first.

On vehicles with a vehicle battery fitted with a colour indicator, » Fig. 132the colouring of the display can indicate the acidic level.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. For this reason carefully knock on the indicator before carrying out the check.
› Black colour – electrolyte level is correct.
› Colourless or light yellow colour – electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Vehicles with a START-STOP system are fitted with a battery control unit for checking the energy level for the recurring engine start.

We recommend that you have the acid level checked regularly by a specialist garage, especially in the following cases.
› High external temperatures.
› Longer day trips.
› After each charge.

Winter time
The vehicle battery only has a proportion of the starting power in lower temperatures. **A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C**.

We therefore recommend that you have the battery checked and, if necessary, recharged by a specialist garage before the start of the winter.

Note
▪ The battery acid level is also checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.
▪ For technical reasons, on vehicles with the description "AGM", the electrolyte level cannot be checked.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 149 first.

A properly charged vehicle battery is essential for reliably starting the engine.

A charging operation can be performed if the following conditions are satisfied.
✓ The engine is turned off.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ All consumers are turned off.
✓ The bonnet is open.

"Fast charging" with high currents
› Disconnect both battery cables (first of all "negative", then "positive").
› Attach the terminal clamps of the charger to the battery terminals (red = "positive", black = "negative").
› Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
› After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
› Only then disconnect the charger's terminal clamps.
› Reconnect the cables to the battery (first "positive", then "negative").

Charging with low voltages
It is not necessary to disconnect the cables from the battery if you recharge the vehicle battery, for example from a mini-charger.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

The vent plugs of the vehicle battery should not be opened for charging. ▸

WARNING

- When you charge a battery, hydrogen is released, and a highly explosive gas mixture is also produced. An explosion can be caused through sparkling over during unclamping or loosening of the cable plug while the ignition is on.
- Creating a bridge between the poles on the battery (e.g. with metal objects - cables) creates a short circuit - risk of damage to the battery, explosion and burning of the battery, jets of acid spurting out.
- Avoid creating sparks when working with cables and electrical devices. Strong sparking represents a risk of injury.
- Before carrying out any work on the electrical system, switch off the engine, the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative terminal ⊖.
- "Quick-charging" the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge.
- We therefore recommend that vehicle batteries be "rapidly charged" by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

On vehicles with the START/STOP system, the pole terminal of the charger must not be connected directly to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth » page 167, *Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle*.

Replacing

Read and observe ! and ! on page 149 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and size as the original battery. Suitable vehicle battery types can be purchased from a specialist garage.

We recommend having the battery replaced by a specialist garage, where the new vehicle battery will be installed properly and the original battery will be disposed of in accordance with national regulations.

Disconnecting and reconnecting

Read and observe ! and ! on page 149 first.

Disconnecting

› Switch off the ignition.

› First, disconnect the negative terminal ⊖ first, then the positive ⊕ terminal of the battery.

Connecting

› First, connect the positive ⊕ first, then the negative ⊖ battery terminal.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Commissioning
Radio and/or navigation system	Enter code number » *User radio manual* and/or » *navigation system user manual*
Time settings	» page 33

CAUTION

- Disconnect the vehicle battery only with the ignition turned off - there is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Under no circumstances must the battery cables be connected incorrectly – risk of a cable fire.

Note

- After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of all electrical systems is guaranteed.
- The data of the multi-function display will be reset.

Automatic load deactivation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 149 first.

The vehicle voltage control unit automatically prevents the battery from discharging when the battery is put under high levels of strain. This manifests itself by the following.

› The idling speed is raised to allow the generator to deliver more electricity to the electrical system.

› Where necessary, large convenience consumers such as seat heaters and rear window heaters have their power limited or are shut off completely in the event of an emergency.

CAUTION

- Despite such intervention by the vehicle electric system management, the vehicle battery may be drained. For example, when the ignition is switched on a long time with the engine turned off or the side or parking lights are turned on during longer parking.
- Consumers that are supplied via a 12-V power socket can cause the vehicle battery to discharge when the ignition is switched off.

Note

Driving comfort is not impaired by consumers being deactivated. The driver is often not aware of it having taken place.

Wheels

Tyres and wheel rims

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Notes on using wheels 152
Tyre pressure 153
Tyre wear 153
Tyre wear indicator and wheels exchange 154
Tyre damage 154
Unidirectional tyres 155

Only use tyres or wheel rims that have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

WARNING

The national legal regulations must be observed for the use of tyres.

WARNING

For reasons of driving safety, do not replace tyres individually.

For the sake of the environment

Old and unserviceable tyres are classified in a special environmentally hazardous category. These must be disposed of in accordance with national legal regulations.

Note

- We recommend that any works on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use wheel rims, tyres, full wheel trims and snow chains from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Notes on using wheels

Read and observe ! on page 152 first.

During the first 500 km, new tyres do not offer optimum grip and appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Always fit the tyres with the deeper tread depth to the front wheels.

Tyre storage
Identify disassembled tyres so that the previous direction of rotation can be maintained if the tyres are reassembled.

Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry place that is as dark as possible. Tyres which are not fixed to a wheel trim should be stored upright.

Tyre age
Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. The service life of the tyres is 6 years. Therefore, we recommend not using tyres that are older than 6 years.

Wheel bolts
Wheels and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use wheel rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

! WARNING
Never use tyres if you do not know anything about the condition and age.

Tyre pressure

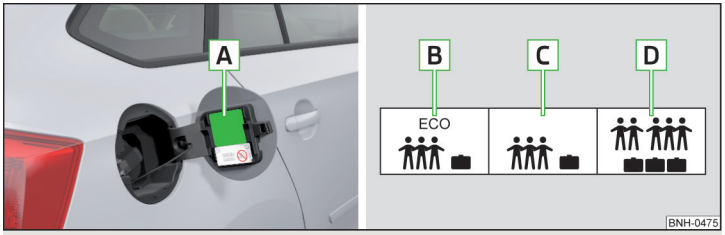


Fig. 133 **Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressures / inflate tyres**

Read and observe ! on page 152 first.

Tyre pressure is always to match the load. The specified tyre pressures are on a label A» Fig. 133.

Sticker with prescribed tyre inflation pressure values » Fig. 133
A Position of the CNG label
B Inflation pressure for half load
C Inflation pressure for increased driving comfort at half load
D Inflation pressure for full load

As a result of adjusting pressure to the value C for increased driving comfort, fuel consumption can rise slightly.

Check tyre pressures
Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure on warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring tyre pressure values are to be stored every time the tyre pressure changes » page 119.

! WARNING
- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility.
- Too low or too high inflation pressure impairs handling.
- If the inflation pressure is too low, the tyre will have to overcome a higher rolling resistance. This will cause a significant increase in the temperature of the tyre, especially at higher speeds. This can result in tread separation and a tyre blow out.
- In the event of very fast tyre inflation pressure loss, such as a sudden tyre failure, an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking.

For the sake of the environment
Tyres that are insufficiently inflated increase your fuel consumption.

Note
In some countries, the vehicles have a sticker without pictograms.

Tyre wear

Read and observe ! on page 152 first.

Tyre wear depends on the pressure, driving style, and other circumstances.

Attention to the following notes may affect tyre wear.

Driving style
Fast cornering, sharp acceleration and braking increase the wear of your tyres. ▸

Wheel balance
The wheels of a new vehicle are balanced. When driving, however, there are a range of factors that may result in an imbalance. This may become apparent by a "vibration" in the steering. If this is the case, have the wheels checked by a specialist garage.

Have the wheels likewise rebalanced after replacing the tyres.

Setting the vehicle geometry
Incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear leads to excess wear on the tyres and impairs driving safety. With a distinctive tyre wear, we recommend that you check the setting of the vehicle geometry in a specialist workshop.

WARNING

- An incorrect wheel alignment at the front or rear impairs handling.
- Unusual vibrations or pulling of the vehicle to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. If there is any suspicion that a wheel is damaged, immediately reduce your speed and stop! If no external tyre damage is evident, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest specialist garage to have the vehicle checked.

Tyre wear indicator and wheels exchange

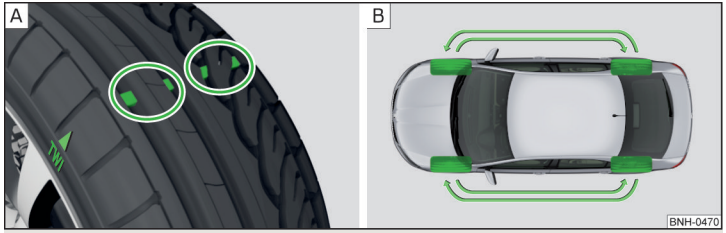


Fig. 134 **Principle sketch: Replace tyre tread with wear indicators / wheels**

Read and observe ! on page 152 first.

Wear indicators
The base of the tread of the tyres contains has a 1.6 mm high wear indicator » Fig. 134 - A. In some countries, different tyre wear rates may apply.

Markings on the walls of the tyres through the letters "TWI", triangular symbols or other symbols identify the position of the wear indicators.

Exchanging the wheels
For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10 000 km according to the scheme » Fig. 134- B. You will then obtain approximately the same life for all the tyres.

After a wheel has been replaced, the tyre pressure has to be adjusted.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values are to be stored » page 119.

WARNING

- You must have your tyres replaced with new ones at the latest when the wear indicators have been worn down.
- Worn tyres impair necessary adhesion to the road surface, particularly at high speeds on wet roads. This could lead to "aquaplaning" (uncontrolled vehicle movement – "swimming" on a wet road surface).

Tyre damage

Read and observe ! on page 152 first.

We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges, etc.) on a regular basis. Remove foreign bodies (e.g. small stones) from the tyre tread immediately.

Drive over kerbs and other such obstacles slowly and at right angles wherever possible in order to avoid damage to tyres and wheel trims.

Immediately replace damaged wheel rims or tyres.

WARNING

Never drive with damaged tyres – there is the risk of an accident occurring.

CAUTION

The tyres must be protected from contact with substances such as oil, grease and fuel, which could damage them. If the tyres come into contact with these substances, then we recommend you have this checked out in a specialist workshop.

Unidirectional tyres

Read and observe ! on page 152 first.

The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The indicated direction of rotation must be adhered to in order to ensure the optimal characteristics of these tyres.

These characteristics mainly relate to the following.
› Increased driving stability.
› Reduced risk of aquaplaning.
› Reduced tyre noise and tyre wear.

Manufacturer-approved tyre variants

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Explanation of the tyre labelling ____ 155
Spaceback ____ 156
Spaceback Green Line ____ 156
Spaceback Green tec ____ 156

Approved tyre variants are first to be selected for the model variant (e.g. Spaceback GreenLine), and then selected according to the engine size of your vehicle.

If the model variant of your vehicle cannot be found in the discrete module, then the approved tyre variants are to be selected according to the engine size of your vehicle in module » page 156, *Spaceback*.

Only use radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

When mounting new tyres the tyres have to be replaced axle by axle.

The information listed in the table corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

The approved tyre / rim combinations for your car are given on the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

Explanation of the tyre labelling

Explanation of tyre markings
For example, **225/50R 17 91 T**means:

225	Tyre width in mm
50	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
17	Diameter of wheel in inches
91	Load index
T	Speed symbol

The **date of manufacture** is stated on the tyre wall (possibly on the **inside**).

For example **DOT ... 11 14...** means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 11th week of 2014.

The marking **M+S**means that the associated tyre is suitable for winter use.

Load index
The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

Load index	83	84	85	86	87	88
Load (In kg)	487	500	515	530	545	560

Speed symbol
The maximum speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible vehicle speed with fitted tyres in each category.

Speed symbol	S	T	U	H	V	W
Maximum speed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270

! WARNING
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** of mounted tyres.
- Never exceed the maximum permissible **speed** for the mounted tyres.

CAUTION

The information about load index and speed symbol can be found in the vehicle sales and technical documentation.

Spaceback

Motorisation	Tyre size	Minimal Load index	Minimal Speed symbol
1.2 l./55 kW MPI	175/70 R14	84	T
	185/60 R15	84	T
	215/45 R16[a)]	86	T
	215/40 R17[a)]	87	T
1.2 l/63 kW TSI	175/70 R14	84	T
	185/60 R15	84	T
	215/45 R16[a)]	86	T
	215/40 R17[a)]	87	T
1.2 l/77 kW TSI	185/60 R15	84	H
	195/55 R15	85	H
	215/45 R16[a)]	86	H
	215/40 R17[a)]	87	H
1.4 l/90 kW TSI	185/60 R15	84	H
	195/55 R15	85	H
	215/45 R16[a)]	86	H
	215/40 R17[a)]	87	H
1.6 l./77 kW MPI	185/60 R15	84	H
	195/55 R15	85	H
	215/45 R16[a)]	86	H
	215/40 R17[a)]	87	H
1.6 ltr. / 66 kW TDI CR	185/60 R15	84	H
	195/55 R15	85	H
	215/45 R16[a)]	86	H
	215/40 R17[a)]	87	H
1.6 ltr. / 77 kW TDI CR	185/60 R15	84	H
	195/55 R15	85	H
	215/45 R16[a)]	86	H
	215/40 R17[a)]	87	H

[a)] Not valid for the following markets: Armenia, Azerbaijan, Belarus, Georgia, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova, Russia, Tajikistan, Turkmenistan, Ukraine, and Uzbekistan.

Spaceback Green Line

Motorisation	Tyre size	Minimal Load index	Minimal Speed symbol
1.6 ltr. / 66 kW TDI CR	185/60 R15	84	H

Spaceback Green tec

Motorisation	Tyre size	Minimal Load index	Minimal Speed symbol
1.2 l/77 kW TSI	185/60 R15	84	H
1.4 l/90 kW TSI	185/60 R15	84	H
1.6 ltr. / 66 kW TDI CR	185/60 R15	84	H
1.6 ltr. / 77 kW TDI CR	185/60 R15	84	H

Winter operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Winter tyres 157
Snow chains 157

Winter tyres

Summer tyres have less grip on ice, snow and at temperatures below 7 °C. This is especially true of vehicles fitted with **wide tyres** or **high-speed tyres**.

Fitting winter tyres will significantly improve the handling of your vehicle when driving in wintry road conditions.

To get best possible handling, winter tyres must be fitted to all four wheels. The minimum tread depth must be 4 mm.

Winter tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol) of a lower speed category can be used provided that the permissible maximum speed of these tyres is not exceeded even if the possible maximum speed of the vehicle is higher.

The speed limit for winter tyres can be set in the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Winter tyres** » page 47.

Only use those tyres or wheel rims which have been approved by ŠKODA for your model of vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Fit the summer tyres on again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise, and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C. The fuel consumption is also lower.

Snow chains

When driving in wintry road conditions, snow chains improve not only traction, but also the braking performance.

Snow chains must only be mounted on the front wheels.

For technical reasons, it is only permissible to fit snow chains with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Wheel size	Depth D	Tyre size
5J x 14[a)]	35 mm	175/70 R14
6J x 15[b)]	38 mm	185/60 R15
6J x 15[b)]	38 mm	195/55 R15

a) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than **9 mm**.
b) Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than **13 mm**.

Remove the full wheel trims before installing the snow chains » page 161.

WARNING

Observe the national legal regulations relating to the use of snow chains.

CAUTION

The chains are to be removed when driving on snow-free paths. They would otherwise cause loss of performance and damage the tyres.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Placement of the first-aid kit and warning triangle ____ 158
Placement of the reflective vest ____ 158
fire extinguisher ____ 158
Vehicle tool kit ____ 159

Placement of the first-aid kit and warning triangle



Fig. 135
First-aid kit / warning triangle

The following information is for the first aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original accessories valid.

For another first aid kit and warning triangle the storage compartments may possibly be too small.

First-aid box
The first-aid box can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 135.

Warning triangle
The warning triangle can be attached to the rear wall trim panel with rubber straps » Fig. 135.

WARNING
The first-aid kit and warning triangle must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the first-aid kit.
- We recommend using a first-aid kit from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which are available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Placement of the reflective vest



Fig. 136
Reflective vest

The reflective vest can be stored in a bracket under the driver's seat » Fig. 136.

fire extinguisher



Fig. 137
Fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

Removing/attaching
› Loosen the two straps by pulling the buckles in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 137.

› Remove the fire extinguisher.
› For mounting, fit the fire extinguisher back into the holder and secure it with straps.

Please read carefully the instructions which are attached to the fire extinguisher.

The fire extinguisher must be checked by an authorised person once a year. The national legal requirements must be observed.

WARNING

The fire extinguisher must always be secured safely so that they do not come loose when making an emergency braking or in a vehicle collision which could cause injuries to occupants.

Note

- The fire extinguisher must comply with national legal requirements.
- Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. Proper functioning of the fire extinguisher is not assured once it has passed its expiry date.
- The fire extinguisher is part of the scope of delivery in certain countries only.

Vehicle tool kit

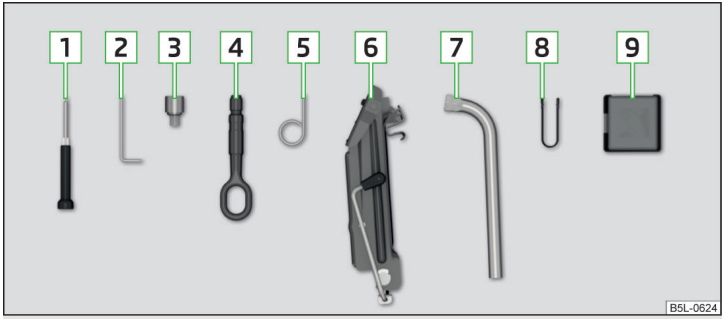


Fig. 138 **Vehicle tool kit**

The vehicle tool kit is housed in a box in the spare wheel or in the storage space for the spare wheel.

Depending on the equipment, not all the components listed in the on-board tool kit have to be contained in it.

1. Screwdriver
2. Spanner for removing and installing the tail light
3. Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts
4. Towing eyelet
5. Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6. Depending upon vehicle equipment: Jack with sign / puncture repair kit
7. Wheel wrench
8. Extraction pliers for wheel bolt caps
9. Replacement bulb set

WARNING

The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift heavier vehicles or other loads.

CAUTION

- Screw the jack back into the starting position before storing in the box with the tool kit.
- Ensure that the vehicle tool kit is safely secured in the boot.
- Ensure that the box is always secured with the strap.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Reserve and temporary spare wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Remove / store wheel ____ 160
Spare wheel ____ 160

When using an emergency or spare wheel make sure to mount a wheel with the appropriate dimensions and design as soon as possible.

After changing the spare wheel, the tyre pressure should be adjusted. In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values are to be stored » page 119.

WARNING

- If, in the case of puncture occurring, the spare tyre with a non-bound direction or an opposite direction of rotation must be mounted, then drive carefully. The best properties of the tyre are no longer present in this situation.
- If the dimensions or design of the spare wheel differ from the tyres fitted to the vehicle (e.g. winter tyres or low-profile tyres), it must only be used briefly in the event of a puncture and if an appropriately cautious style of driving is adopted.
- If the dimensions or design of the temporary spare wheel differ from the fitted tyres, never drive faster than 80 km/h (or 50 mph).
- Never use the temporary spare wheel if it is damaged.

Remove / store wheel



Fig. 139
Take out the wheel

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the boot and is fixed in place with a special bolt » Fig. 139.

Take out the wheel

› Open the boot lid.
› Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Loosen the belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
› Unscrew the nut in direction of arrow » Fig. 139.
› Take out the wheel.

Stow the wheel

› Place the wheel into the spare wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downward.
› Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
› Screw on the nut in the opposite direction to the arrow » Fig. 139 until the wheel is safely secured.
› Place the box with the tool kit back into the spare wheel and secure it with the tape.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Close the boot lid.

Spare wheel

Read and observe ! on page 160 first.

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.

› The warning label must not be covered after installing the wheel.
› Be particularly observant when driving.
› The emergency spare is inflated to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » page 153.
› Only use this temporary spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, since it is not intended for permanent use.

WARNING

- Never drive with more than one temporary spare wheel mounted!
- Only use the temporary spare wheel when absolutely necessary.
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.
- The snow chains cannot be used on the temporary spare wheel.
- Observe the instructions on the warning sign of the temporary spare wheel.

Changing a wheel

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Preliminary work 161
Full wheel trim 161
Wheel bolts 161
Changing a wheel 162
Follow-up work 162
Loosening/tightening wheel bolts 162

Raising the vehicle 163
Anti-theft wheel bolts 164

For your own safety and the safety of the passengers, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights system.
✓ The warning triangle is to be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic.
✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
✓ Have **all the occupants get out.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

The following instructions must be followed if the vehicle is subsequently fitted with tyres or rims that differ from the factory-fitted ones » page 155, *Explanation of the tyre labelling*.

The national legal requirements must be observed when changing a wheel.

Preliminary work

Before changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Switch off the engine.
› Select the **first gear** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› Uncouple any trailers.
› Remove the **vehicle tool kit** » page 159and the **spare wheel** » page 159from the boot.

Full wheel trim

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the wheel cover.

Removing

› Hook the clamp found in the vehicle tool kit » page 159into the reinforced edge of the wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening » !.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

! CAUTION

Notes from the factory or from the ŠKODA Original accessory delivered trim..
▪ When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.
▪ On the back of the wheel cover, the position for the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked by means of a symbol. If the wheel cover is set outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel cover.

! CAUTION

▪ Use the pressure of your hand only, do not strike the full wheel trim! The cover could be damaged.
▪ If wheel trims are fitted, an adequate flow of air must be assured in order to cool the brake system.

i Note

We recommend that you use wheel trims from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 140
Remove the cap

Before removing the wheel bolts, remove the covering caps.

Removing

› Push the extraction pliers » page 159sufficiently far onto the cap until the inner catches of the pliers are positioned at the collar of the cap.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 140.

Installing

› Push the cap onto the wheel bolt up to the stop.

Changing a wheel

When changing a wheel, the following instructions must be followed.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› First of all slacken the anti-theft wheel bolt and then the other wheel bolts.
› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Alternately tighten wheel bolts opposite (diagonally) with the wheel wrench. Tighten the anti-theft wheel bolt last.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 155.

WARNING

- Undo the wheel bolts only a little (about one turn) provided that the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could become loose and fall off.
- All bolts must be clean and must turn easily.
- If it is established when changing a wheel that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to move, then these must be replaced.
- Under no circumstances grease or oil the wheel bolts!

Follow-up work

After changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Stow and attach the replaced wheel in the spare wheel well using a special screw » page 159.
› Stow the tool kit in the space provided and secure using the band.
› **Check** the **tyre pressure** on the installed spare wheel as soon as possible.
› Have the **tightening torque** of the wheel bolts **checked** with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

After changing the wheel, the tyre pressure should be adjusted. In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values are to be stored » page 119.

Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

WARNING

Information on the wheel bolts

- The prescribed tightening torque of the wheel bolts for steel and light alloy wheels is 120 Nm.
- If the wheel bolts are tightened to a too low tightening torque, the rim can come loose when the car is moving. A tightening torque which is too high can damage the bolts and threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim.
- In case of incorrect treatment of the wheel bolts, the wheel can loosen when the car is moving.
- Drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts



Fig. 141
Changing a wheel: Loosening the wheel bolts

Before removing the wheel bolts, the caps for the wheel bolts must be pulled off.

Releasing

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop[1].

[1] Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 164.

› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt about **one** turn in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 141.

Tightening

› Push the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop[1].
› Grasp the end of the wrench and turn the bolt against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 141until it is tight.

After tightening the wheel bolts, the covering caps must be replaced.

WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing.

Raising the vehicle



Fig. 142
Jacking points for positioning lifting jack

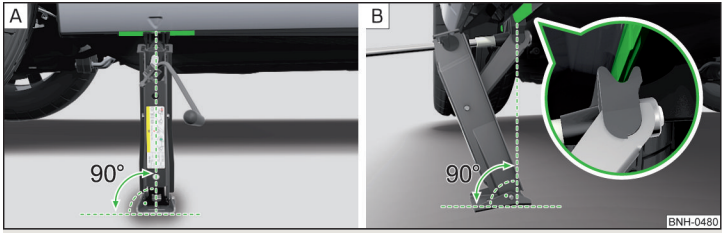


Fig. 143 **Attach lifting jack**

In order to raise the vehicle, the jack from the tool kit is to be used.

Position the car jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre .

The mounting points are located on the metal bar of the lower sill on the underside of your vehicle. The positions of these are embossed by means of markings on the side surface of the lower sill » Fig. 142.

› Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point » Fig. 143 - A.
› Position the lifting jack below the jacking point with the crank and move it up until its claw encloses the web » Fig. 143 - B.
› Continue turning up the jack until the wheel is just about lifted off the ground.

WARNING

Notes for vehicle lifting

- Choose a flat and firm surface for jacking the vehicle.
- If the wheel has to be changed on a slope, first of all block the opposite wheel with a stone or similar object to prevent the vehicle from unexpectedly rolling away.
- Secure the base plate of the lifting jack with suitable means to prevent possible moving. A soft and slippery ground under the base plate may move the lifting jack, causing the vehicle to fall down. It is therefore always necessary to place the lifting jack on a solid surface or use a wide and stable base. Use a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber foot mat) if the **surface is smooth**, such as cobbled stones, tiled floor, etc.
- Only attach the lifting jack to the attachment points provided for this purpose.
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts, such as arms or legs under the vehicle, while the vehicle is raised with a lifting jack.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly attached to the web of the lower fork leg, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle occurring.

[1] Use the appropriate adapter for undoing and tightening the anti-theft wheel bolts » page 164.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

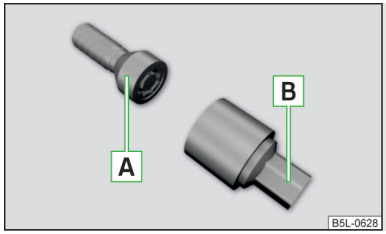


Fig. 144
Principle sketch: Anti-theft wheel bolt with adapter

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect the wheels from theft. These can only be loosened or tightened with the use of adapter B» Fig. 144.

› Remove the full wheel trim or the caps of the wheel bolts.
› Insert adapter B» Fig. 144 with the toothed side all the way into the inner teeth in the head of the anti-theft wheel bolts A.
› Push the wheel wrench onto the adapter B up to the stop.
› Loosen or tighten the wheel bolt » page 162.
› Remove the adapter.
› Replace the wheel trim or the caps.

To be equipped for a possible wheel change, the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle. The adapter is stowed in the tool kit.

Note

▪ Note the code number which is embossed both on the adapter and also on the end of each anti-theft wheel bolt. This number can be used to purchase a replacement adapter from ŠKODA Genuine Parts if required.
▪ The anti-theft wheel bolt set and adapter can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.
▪ The position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is marked on the back of the wheel cover with every ŠKODA supplied original equipment hub cap or directly at the factors. When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, make sure that this has been fitted according to the position marked on the back of the wheel cover position.

Puncture set

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Components of the puncture repair kits 165
General information 165
Preparations for using the breakdown kit 165
Sealing and inflating the tyre 166
Notes for driving with tyre repaired 166

Use the breakdown kit to reliably repair tyre damage caused by foreign bodies or a puncture with diameters up to approx. 4 mm.

A repair made using the breakdown kit is **never intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

The wheel must not be removed during repair.

Do not remove foreign bodies, e.g. screws or nails, from the tyre!

WARNING

▪ The sealant is hazardous to heath. Remove immediately if it comes into contact with the skin.
▪ Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

For the sake of the environment

Used sealant or sealant whose expiry date has passed must be disposed of in accordance with environmental protection regulations.

Note

▪ A new bottle of sealant can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.
▪ Immediately replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Components of the puncture repair kits

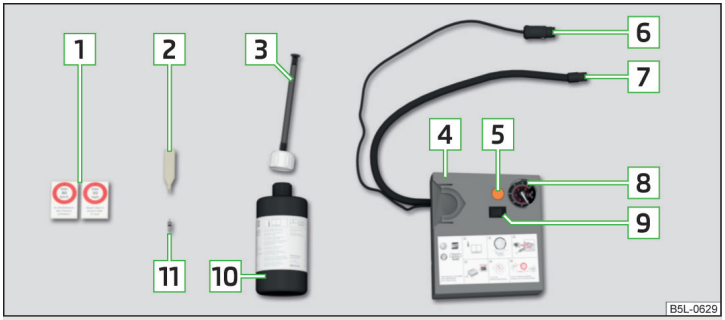


Fig. 145 **Principle sketch: Components of the breakdown kit**

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

Components of the set » Fig. 145

1 Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
2 Valve remover
3 Inflation hose with plug
4 Air compressor
5 Button for releasing the tyre pressure
6 12 volt cable connector
7 Tyre inflation hose
8 Tyre inflation pressure indicator
9 ON and OFF switch
10 Tyre inflater bottle with sealing agent
11 Replacement valve core

The valve remover 2 has a slot at its lower end which fits into the valve core.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment. This contains a sealing means and an air compressor.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

General information

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

For your own safety and the safety of your passengers, the following instructions must be observed before carrying out a wheel repair on the road.

✓ Switch on the hazard warning lights system.
✓ The warning triangle is to be set up at the prescribed distance - observe the national legal provisions when doing so.
✓ Park the vehicle as far away as possible from the flow of traffic.
✓ Choose a location with a flat, solid surface.
✓ Have **all the occupants get out.** The passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance) while the wheel is being changed.

The national legal requirements must be observed when repairing a tyre.

The breakdown kit must not be used under the following circumstances.
› The rim is damaged.
› The outside temperature is below -20 ° C.
› The cut or puncture is larger than 4 mm.
› The tyre wall is damaged.
› The result will be to drive with very low tyre pressure or with a completely flat tyres.
› After the expiration date (see inflation bottle).

Preparations for using the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

The following preparatory work must be carried out before using the puncture repair kit.

› Switch off the engine.
› Select the **first gear** or move the selector lever for the automatic gearbox **into position P**.
› Firmly apply the **handbrake**.
› Check that you can carry out the repairs with the breakdown kit » page 165, *General information*.
› Remove the **breakdown kit** from the boot.
› Stick the sticker 1 » Fig. 145 *on page 165* on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.
› Unscrew the valve cap.

› Use the valve remover 2 to unscrew the valve core and place it on a clean surface (rag, paper, etc.).

Sealing and inflating the tyre

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

Sealing

› Forcefully shake the tyre inflater bottle 10 » Fig. 145 *on page 165* back and forth several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflater bottle 10 in a clockwise direction. The film on the cap is pierced automatically.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and plug the open end fully onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflater bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the empty tyre inflater bottle from the valve.
› Screw the valve core back into the tyre valve using the valve remover 2.

Inflating

› Screw the tyre inflation hose 7 » Fig. 145 *on page 165* of the air compressor firmly onto the tyre valve.
› Start the engine and run it in idle.
› Plug the connector 6 into 12 Volt socket » page 76, *12-Volt power outlet*.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Allow the air compressor to run until a pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar is achieved. Maximum run time of 8 minutes » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 7 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› If you cannot reach the required tyre inflation pressure here either, this means the tyre has sustained too much damage. You cannot seal with tyre with the breakdown kit » !.
› Switch off the air compressor.
› Remove the tyre inflation hose 7 from the tyre valve.

Once a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

- If you cannot inflate the tyre to at least 2.0 bar, this means the damage sustained was too serious. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. STOP Do not continue to drive! Seek help from a specialist garage.
- The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – there is a risk of burning.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor after running 8 minutes at the latest – there is a risk of overheating! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Notes for driving with tyre repaired

Read and observe ! on page 164 first.

The inflation pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› STOP **Do not drive the vehicle!** You cannot properly seal with tyre with the breakdown kit.

If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

! WARNING

- A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle 167

The battery of another vehicle can be used to jump-start your vehicle if the engine will not start because the battery is flat.

WARNING

- Pay attention to the warning instructions relating to working in the engine compartment » page 141.
- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not jump start with the battery of another vehicle – there is a risk of explosion!
- Keep any sources of ignition (naked flame, smouldering cigarettes, etc.) away from the battery – risk of explosion!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with insufficient acid levels – risk of explosion and chemical burns.
- The vent screws of the battery cells must be tightened firmly.

Note

We recommend you buy jump-start cables from a car battery specialist.

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

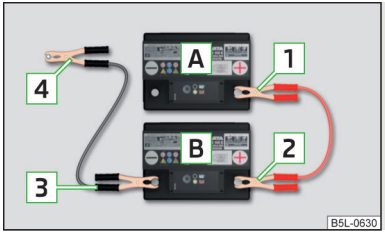


Fig. 146
Jump-starting: A – flat battery, B – battery providing current

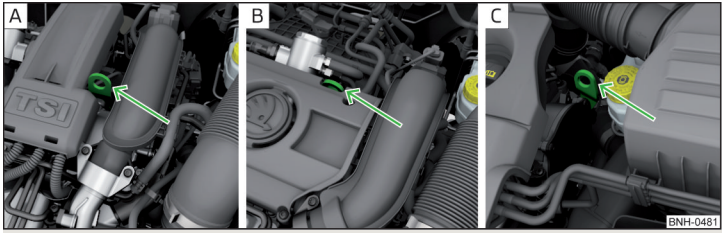


Fig. 147 **Engine earth: START-STOP system**

Read and observe ! on page 167 first.

The starting process using the battery of another vehicle requires the use of jumper cables.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

› Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery A » Fig. 146.
› Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the battery supplying power B.
› Attach the clamp 4 to a solid metal component firmly connected to the engine block or to the engine block itself.

Starting engine

› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
› Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
› If the engine does not start, halt the attempt to start the engine after 10 seconds and wait for thirty seconds before repeating the process.
› Remove the jumper cables exactly in the **reverse** sequence as for clamping.

On vehicles with the START-STOP system, the jump-start cable of the charger must never be connected directly to the negative pole of the vehicle battery, but only to the engine earth.

› 1.2 l/63 kW TSI and 1.2 l/77 kW TSI engines » Fig. 147 - A
› 1.4 l./90 kW engine » Fig. 147 - B
› 1.6 l./77 kW TDI CR engine » Fig. 147 - C

Both batteries must have a rated voltage of 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the battery supplying the power must not be significantly less than the capacity of the discharged battery in your vehicle.

Jump-start cables

Only use jump-start cables which have an adequately large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps. Observe the instructions of the jumper lead manufacturer.

Positive cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is red.

Negative cable – colour coding in the majority of cases is black.

WARNING

- Do not clamp the jump-start cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. There is the risk of detonating gas seeping out of the battery being ignited by the strong spark resulting from the engine being started.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – there is a risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – there is a risk of short circuit!
- Route the jump-start cables so that they cannot be caught by any rotating parts in the engine compartment.
- There must not be any contact between the two vehicles, otherwise current may flow as soon as the negative terminals are connected.

Towing the vehicle

Introduction

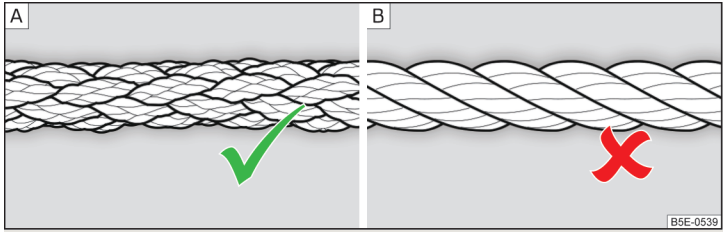


Fig. 148 **Braided tow rope / Spiral tow rope**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front towing eye 169
Rear towing eye 169
Vehicles with a tow hitch 169

For towing a braided tow rope is to be used » Fig. 148- A.

When towing, the following guidelines must be observed.

Vehicles with **manual transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front or rear wheels raised.

Vehicles with **automatic transmission** may be towed in with a tow bar or a tow rope or with the front wheels raised. If the vehicle is raised at the rear, the automatic gearbox will be damaged!

Driver of the tow vehicle

› Engage the clutch gently when starting off or depress the accelerator particularly gently if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Only then, approach correctly when the rope is taut.

The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› Switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel is not locked and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.

Please note that the brake servo unit and power steering only operate if the engine is running. If the engine is not running, significantly more physical force is required to depress the brake pedal and steer the vehicle.

If using a tow rope, ensure that it is always kept taught.

Both drivers should be familiar with the problems which might possibly occur while a vehicle is being towed. Unskilled drivers should not attempt to tow another vehicle or to be towed in one.

The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

WARNING

- When towing, respect the national legal provisions, especially those which relate to the identification of the towing vehicle and the vehicle being towed.
- When towing, exercise increased caution.
- For towing no spiral tow rope is to be used » Fig. 148- B, the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle - there is a risk of accidents.
- The tow rope should not be twisted - there is a risk of accidents.

CAUTION

- Do not start the engine by towing – there is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 166, *Jump-starting*.
- If the gearbox no longer contains any oil, your vehicle must only be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.
- To protect both vehicles when tow-starting or towing, the tow rope should be elastic. Thus only plastic fibre rope or a rope made out of a similarly elastic material should be used.
- There is always a risk of excessive stresses and damage resulting at the points to which you attach the tow rope or tow bar when you attempt to tow a vehicle which is not standing on a paved road.
- Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes** » page 169 or » page 169 to the **detachable ball head of the towing equipment** » page 120.

Note

We recommend using a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories, which is available from a ŠKODA Partner.

Front towing eye



Fig. 149 **Removing the cap/installing the towing eye**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 168 first.

Removing/installing the cap

› Press on the cap in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 149.
› Remove the cap in the direction of the arrow 2.
› After unscrewing the cap of the towing eye, insert the cap in the region of the arrow 1 and then press the opposite side of the cap.

The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› Manually screw the towing eye as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 149» !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› Unscrew the towing eye against the direction of the arrow 3.

WARNING

The towing eye must always be screwed in fully and firmly tightened, otherwise the towing eye can tear when towing or tow-starting.

Rear towing eye



Fig. 150
Rear towing eye

Read and observe ! and ! on page 168 first.

The rear towing eye is located below the bumper on the right.

Remove the protective cap before using the towing eye. » Fig. 150. Replace the protective cap after using the towing eye.

Vehicles with a tow hitch

Read and observe ! and ! on page 168 first.

For vehicles with a factory-fitted towing device, the pre-installed detachable tow-bar may be used » page 120, *Hitch*.

Towing the vehicle using the towing device is a viable alternative solution to using the towing eye.

CAUTION

The detachable ball rod and/or the vehicle can be damaged if an unsuitable tow bar is used.

Remote control

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the battery in the remote control key 170
Synchronising the remote control 170

CAUTION

- The replacement battery must have the same specification as the original battery.
- We recommend having faulty rechargeable batteries replaced by a ŠKODA service partner.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the battery.

For the sake of the environment

Dispose of the used battery in accordance with national legal provisions.

Replacing the battery in the remote control key



Fig. 151 **Remove cover/take out battery**

Read and observe ! on page 170 first.

The battery change is carried out as follows.

› Flip out the key.

› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 151 with your thumb or using a flat screwdriver in the region of the arrows 1.
› Remove the discharged battery from the key by pressing the battery down in the region of the arrow 2.
› Insert the new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

The key has to be synchronised if the vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control key after replacing the battery » page 170.

Note

If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Synchronising the remote control

Read and observe ! on page 170 first.

If the vehicle does not unlock when pressing the remote control, the key may not be synchronised. This can occur when the buttons on the remote control key are actuated a number of times outside of the operative range of the equipment or the battery in the remote control key has been replaced.

Synchronise the key as follows.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

Emergency unlocking/locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Locking the door without a locking cylinder 171
Unlocking the tailgate 171
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 171

Locking the door without a locking cylinder

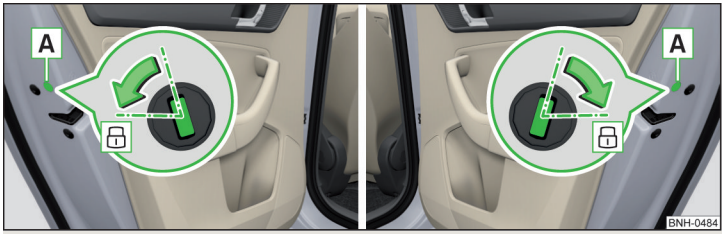


Fig. 152 **Emergency locking: Left/right rear door**

An emergency locking mechanism is located on the face side of the doors which have no locking cylinder. It is only visible after opening the door.

› Remove the cover A » Fig. 152.
› Insert the vehicle key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (sprung position).
› Replace the cover A.

Unlocking the tailgate

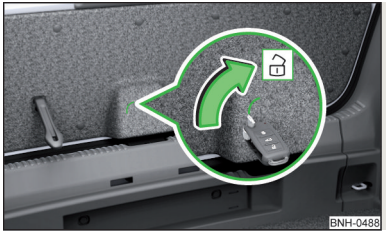


Fig. 153
Emergency unlocking of the boot lid

The boot lid can be unlocked manually in an emergency.

› Insert the vehicle key into the slot in the trim panel » Fig. 153 as far as it will go.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.
› Open the boot lid.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

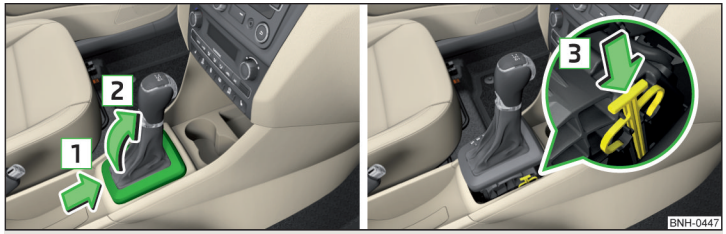


Fig. 154 **Selector lever-emergency unlocking**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› With one hand on the edge of the cover, push in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 154.
› At the same time lift the cover on the selector lever gaiter with the other hand in direction of arrow 2.
› With one finger, push the yellow plastic element in the direction of arrow 3 down to the stop.
› At the same time, press the locking button in the selector lever and move the selector lever to position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades ____ 172
Replacing the rear window wiper blade ____ 172

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons. These can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades



Fig. 155 **Windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 171 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blade, put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Service position for changing wiper blades
- Close the bonnet.
- Switch the ignition on and off again.
- Place the operating lever in position 4 » page 66, *Activating the windscreen wipers and washers*.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Removing the wiper blade
- Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of 1 » Fig. 155.
- Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism A in the direction of arrow 2.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade
- Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
- Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
- Turn on the ignition and press the lever into position 4 » page 66, *Activating the windscreen wipers and washers*.

Move the windscreen wiper arms into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade



Fig. 156 **Rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 171 first.

Removing the wiper blade
- Lift the wiper arm from the window in the direction of 1 » Fig. 156.
- Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
- Hold the upper part of the wiper arm and press the securing mechanism A in the direction of arrow 2.
- Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade
- Push the windscreen wiper blade to the stop until it locks into place.
- Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
- Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dash panel ____ 173
Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel ____ 174
Fuses in the engine compartment ____ 175
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment ____ 175

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses.

Switch off the ignition and the corresponding power consuming device before replacing a fuse.

Find out which fuse belongs to the component that is not operating » page 174, *Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel* or » page 175, *Fuse assignment in the engine compartment*.

Fuse colour	Maximum amperage
light brown	5
dark brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
white	25
green	30
orange	40

WARNING

Always read and observe the warning notes before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 141, *Engine compartment*.

CAUTION

- "Never repair" fuses, and do not replace them with fuses of a higher amperage – risk of fire! This may also cause damage at other points in the electrical system.
- A blown fuse is recognisable by the molten metal strip. Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- If a newly inserted fuse burns through again, then a specialist should be consulted immediately.

Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle. A box of replacement fuses can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.
- There can be several power-consuming devices for one fuse.
- Multiple fuses may exist for a single power-consuming device.

Fuses in the dash panel

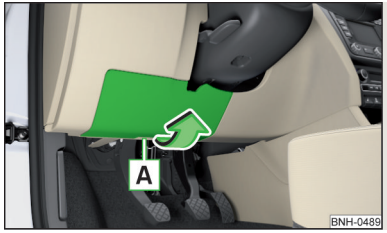


Fig. 157
Remove the fuse box cover.

Read and observe ! and ! on page 173 first.

The fuses are located on the bottom of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

› Grip the fuse box cover at point A and take-out in the direction of arrow » Fig. 157.
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover in the dash panel.
› Place the clip on the respective fuse and pull this fuse out.
› Insert a new fuse.
› Replace the clamp in the original position.
› Insert the top edge of the cover into the dash panel first.

Carefully push the cover in.

Assignment of the fuses in the dash panel

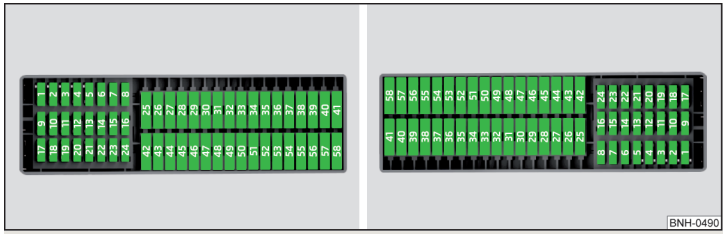


Fig. 158 **Schematic representation of the fuse box for vehicles with left-hand steering/right-hand steering**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 173 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	S-contact
2	START - STOP
3	Instrument cluster, headlight range adjustment, telephone, oil level sensor, diagnostic port, dimmable interior rear-view mirror
4	Control unit for ABS/ESC, steering angle sensor strip with switches
5	Petrol engine: Speed regulating system
6	Reversing light (manual gearbox)
7	Ignition, engine control unit, automatic gearbox
8	Brake pedal switch, clutch switch, engine cooling fan
9	Operating controls for the heating, electronic control unit for air conditioning system, park distance control, window lift, engine cooling fan, heated washer nozzles
10	DC-DC converter
11	Mirror adjustment
12	Control unit for trailer detection
13	Electronic control unit for automatic gearbox, selector lever of the automatic gearbox
14	Headlight range control
15	Not assigned
16	Power steering, speed sensor, engine control unit, control unit for fuel pump
17	Daytime running lights/radio for vehicles with START-STOP
18	Mirror heater
19	Ignition lock input
20	Engine control unit, electronic control unit for fuel pump, fuel pump
21	Reversing lamp (automatic gearbox), fog lights with the function CORNER
22	Operating controls for the heating, electronic control unit for air conditioning system, telephone, instrument cluster, steering angle sender, multi-function steering wheel, ignition key removal lock, diagnostic port, rain sensor
23	Interior lighting, storage compartment and luggage compartment, side lights
24	Central control unit
25	Light switch
26	Rear window wiper
27	Operating lever underneath the steering wheel
28	Petrol engine: ACF valve, PTC heater
29	Injection, coolant pump
30	Fuel pump, ignition system, cruise control
31	Lambda probe
32	High-pressure fuel pump, control valve for fuel pressure
33	Engine control unit
34	Engine control unit, vacuum pump
35	Switch illumination, number plate light, parking light
36	High beam, light switch
37	Rear fog light, DC-DC converter
38	Fog lights
39	Air blower for heating
40	Not assigned
41	Heated front seats
42	Rear window heater

No.	Power consumer
43	Horn
44	Windscreen wipers
45	Boot lid lock, central locking system
46	Alarm
47	Cigarette lighter
48	ABS
49	Turn signal lights, brake lights
50	DC-DC converter, radio
51	Electric windows (driver's window and rear left window)
52	Electric windows (front passenger's window and rear right)
53	Windscreen washer
54	START-STOP instrument cluster, operating lever under the steering wheel, multifunction steering wheel
55	Control unit for automatic gearbox
56	Headlight cleaning system
57	Headlights front, rear
58	Headlights front, rear

Fuses in the engine compartment

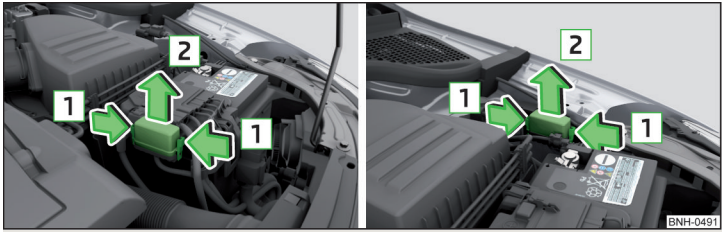


Fig. 159 **Vehicle battery: Cover for the fuse box - variant 1 / variant 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 173 first.

Replacing fuses

› Press together the interlocks of the cover simultaneously in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 159.
› Remove the cover in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Place the cover on top of the fuse box.
› Push in the interlocks on the cover and lock.

The cover must engage securely.

Fuse assignment in the engine compartment

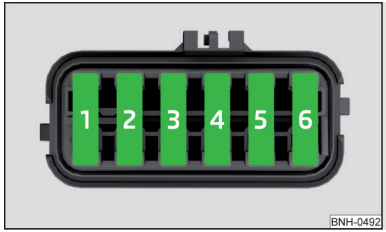


Fig. 160
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 173 first.

No.	Power consumer
1	ABS
2	Radiator fan
3	Automatic gearbox
4	ABS
5	Central control unit
6	Electrical auxiliary heating system

Replacing bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Bulb arrangement in the headlights 176
Replacing the high beam bulb (halogen headlights) 177
Replacing bulb for main beam, daytime running lights and parking light 177
Changing the front turn signal bulb 178
Replacing the bulb for the fog light 178
Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light 179
Rear Light 179
Replacing bulbs in rear light 180

Some manual skills are required to change a bulb. For this reason, we recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

› Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
› Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.
› A stowage compartment for replacement bulbs is located in a plastic box in the spare wheel or underneath the floor covering in the boot.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warning notes before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 141.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot be seen or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- H7 and H15 bulbs are pressurised and may burst when changing the bulb - risk of injury! We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Gas discharge bulbs (xenon bulbs) operate with a high voltage, professional knowledge is required – risk of death!
- Switch off the respective vehicle light when changing the bulb.

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle. Replacement bulbs can be purchased from ŠKODAOriginal Accessories.
- We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the main, low or fog beam.
- In case of failure of a xenon gas discharge lamp or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

Bulb arrangement in the headlights

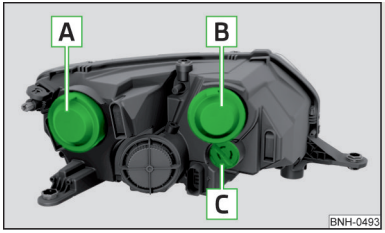


Fig. 161
Principle sketch: Headlights

Read and observe ! and ! on page 176 first.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 161

A Low beam or low beam with xenon gas discharge lamp
B Main beam, separate daytime running lights, and parking light
C Turn signal light (at the front)

Replacing the high beam bulb (halogen headlights)



Fig. 162 **Changing the bulb for the low beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 176 first.

› Remove the protective cap A » Fig. 161 *on page 176*.
› Remove the socket with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 162.
› Remove the connector.
› Insert the connector with the new bulb in the direction of arrow 2 so that the fixing lug A fits the bulb into the recess on the reflector.
› Attach the connector.
› Fit the protective cap A » Fig. 161 *on page 176*.

Replacing bulb for main beam, daytime running lights and parking light

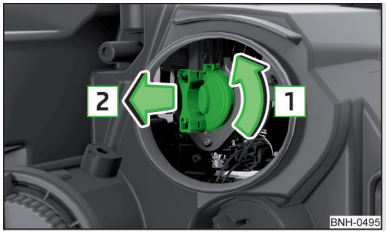


Fig. 163
Replacing the bulb for main beam and separate daytime running lights

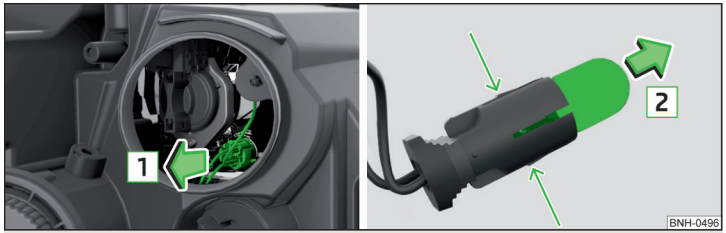


Fig. 164 **Change the light bulb for the parking light**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 176 first.

Removing/replacing the bulb for main beam and separate daytime running lights

› Remove the protective cap B » Fig. 161 *on page 176*.
› Pull the holder until it stops in the arrow direction 1 » Fig. 163.
› Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Change the bulb in the socket.
› Insert the socket with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the socket with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.
› Fit protective cap B » Fig. 161 *on page 176* Insert.

Removing/replacing the bulb for the parking light

› Remove the protective cap B » Fig. 161 *on page 176*.
› Remove the bulb holder with the bulb by jiggling it out in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 164.
› Grasp the lamp socket at the places marked by arrows.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Insert a new bulb in the bulb holder up to the stop.
› Replace the bulb holder in the headlamp with the bulb.
› Fit protective cap B » Fig. 161 *on page 176* Insert.

Changing the front turn signal bulb



Fig. 165
Changing the bulb for the front turn signal light

Read and observe ! and ! on page 176 first.

› Turn the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 165.
› Remove the socket with the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Change the bulb in the socket.
› Insert the socket with the new bulb into the headlight in the opposite direction to the arrow 2.
› Turn the socket with the new bulb in the opposite direction to the arrow 1 until it stops.

Replacing the bulb for the fog light

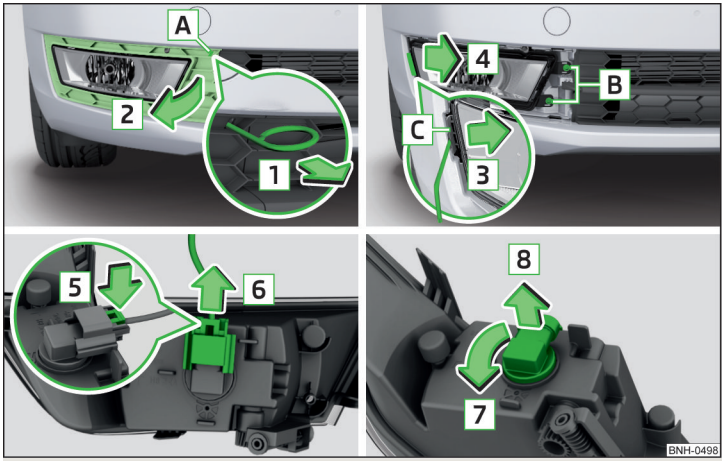


Fig. 166 **Remove the number plate light / replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 176 first.

Remove the protective grille and headlight

› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel covers » page 159, *Vehicle tool kit* into opening A » Fig. 166.
› Loosen the protective grille by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Remove the protective grille in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Unscrew the screws B with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› With the key 2 » page 159, *Vehicle tool kit* unlock the locking C in direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 4.

Replacing the light bulb

› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 5.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 6.
› Pull the lamp holder until it stops in the arrow direction 7.
› Remove the lamp holder in the direction of the arrow 8.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 7 as far as the stop.

› Attach the connector.

Refit the headlight and grille

› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 4 » Fig. 166 and tightening.
› Insert the protective grille and carefully press it in.

The protective grille must engage firmly.

Replacing the bulb for the licence plate light

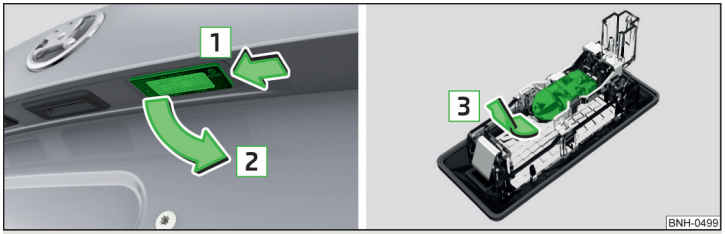


Fig. 167 **Remove the number plate light/replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 176 first.

› Open the boot lid.
› Push in the lamp in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 167.

The lamp comes loose.

› Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow 2 and remove it.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.

Check that the light is securely inserted.

Rear Light

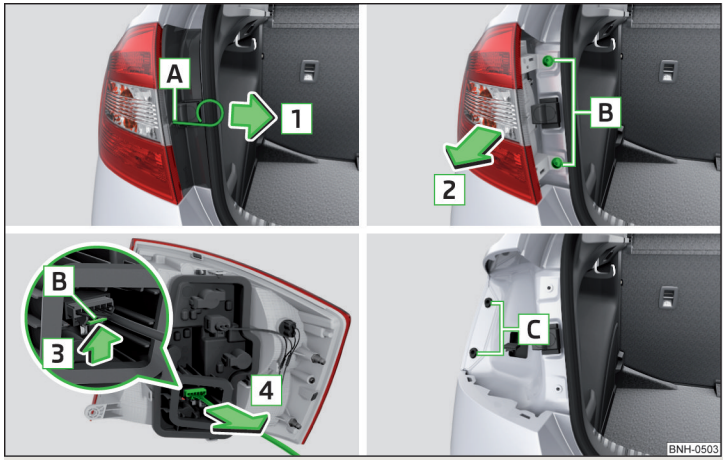


Fig. 168 **Remove light / pull out connector**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 176 first.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.
› Insert the clamps for removing the full wheel covers » page 159, *Vehicle tool kit* into opening A » Fig. 168.
› Remove the cover by pulling the hook in the direction of arrow 1.
› Unscrew the screws B with the key from the tool kit.
› Grasp the lamp and carefully remove in the direction of arrow 2.
› Press the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 3.
› Carefully remove the connector from the tail lamp assembly in the direction of the arrow 4.

Fitting

› Insert the bulb holder into the lamp.

The lock on the plug must be inserted securely.

› Insert the lamp with the pin B » Fig. 169 *on page 180* into the recesses C » Fig. 168 in the body.

› Carefully push the cover in » !.
› Screw the tail lamp into place and install the cover.

The cover must engage securely.

! CAUTION

- Ensure that the cable bundle does not become pinched between the body and the lamp when it is being refitted – risk of damage to the electrical installation and risk of water ingress.
- If you are not sure whether the cable bundle has become pinched, we recommend that you have the light connection checked by a specialist garage.
- Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing bulbs in rear light

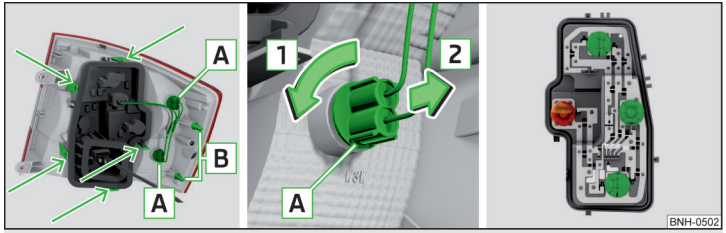


Fig. 169 **Outer part of the lamp/inner part of the lamp**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 176 first.

Outer part of the lamp

› Rotate the lamp socket A » Fig. 169 in direction of arrow 1 and remove in direction of arrow 2 from the lamp housing.
› Changing the lamp, reinsert the holder with the bulb into the lamp housing and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 1 to the stop.

Inner parts of the lamp

› Unlock the bulb holder using the marked area with arrows » Fig. 169 and remove the bulb holder from the light.
› Turn the respective bulb **counter clockwise** until it stops.
› Remove the holder from the lamp.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the bulb holder in the tail lamp assembly.

The lamp holder must engage firmly.

Technical data

Technical data

Vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle characteristics ____ 181
Operating weight and payload ____ 181
Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives ____ 182
Dimensions ____ 183
Angle ____ 184
Vehicle-specific details per engine type ____ 185

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The listed performance values were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle characteristics

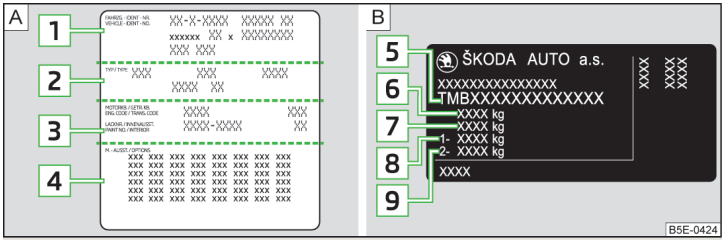


Fig. 170 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

Vehicle data sticker
The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 170 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also stuck into the service schedule.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description

Type plate
The type plate » Fig. 170 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

5 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
6 Maximum permissible gross weight
7 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
8 Maximum permissible front axle load
9 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

Engine number
The engine number (three-digit identifier and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents.

! WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight and payload

Operating weight
This value represents the minimum operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment such as air conditioning system, spare wheel, or trailer hitch.

The specified operating weight is for orientation purposes only.

The operating weight also contains the weight of the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit, and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight of the vehicle » page 185, *Vehicle-specific details per engine type*.

Payload
It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.
› The weight of the passengers.
› The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
› The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
› The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
› Trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 50 kg).

Note
If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

Note
▪ The fuel consumption and emission levels given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by legal or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
▪ Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

Dimensions

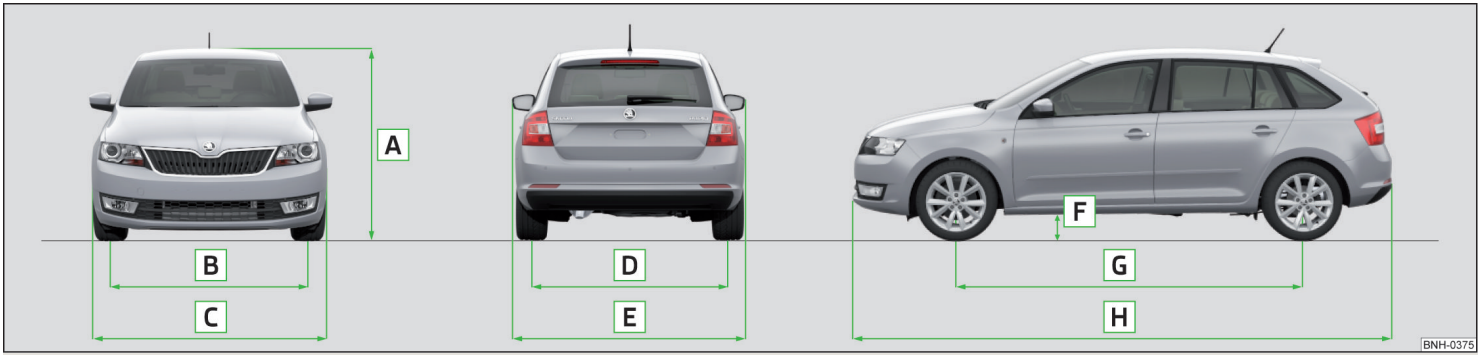


Fig. 171 **Principle sketch: Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 171	Specification		Value
A	Height	Basic dimension	1459/1471[a)]
		Vehicles with an off-road package.	1472/1484[a)]
B	Front track	Basic dimension	1457
		For vehicles fitted with the 1.2 l/55 kW MPI and 1.2 l/63 kW TSI engines and 14" wheel rims.	1463
C	Width		1706
D	Rear track	Basic dimension	1494
		For vehicles fitted with the 1.2 l/55 kW MPI and 1.2 l/63 kW TSI engines and 14" wheel rims.	1500
E	Width including exterior mirror		1940
F	Clearance	Basic dimension	134
		Vehicles with an off-road package.	141
G	Wheel base		2602
H	Length		4304

[a)] Valid for vehicles with the Amundsen+ navigation system.

Angle



Fig. 172
Principle sketch: Departure angle

Angle » Fig. 172

A Overhang angle, front
B Overhang angle, rear

Departure angle
The values shown indicate the maximum incline of an embankment, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without collision of the bumper or underbody.

The values listed correspond to the maximum axle load, front or back.

Overhang angle (°)

Overhang angle, front	Overhang angle, rear
13.8	16.5

Vehicle-specific details per engine type

The specified values have been determined in accordance with rules and under conditions set out by legal or technical requirements for determining operational and technical data for motor vehicles.

1.2 l/55 kW MPI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
55/5400	112/3750	3/1198
Performance and Weights		**MG5**
Top speed (km/h)		172
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		13.8
Operating weight - minimal (kg)		1130
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Increases up to 12 %	750
	Increases up to 8 %	950
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		560

1.2 ltr./63 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
63/4800	160/1500 - 3500	4/1197
Performance and Weights		**MG5**
Top speed (km/h)		180
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		11.7
Operating weight - minimal (kg)		1150
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Increases up to 12 %	900
	Increases up to 8 %	1100
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		570

1.2 ltr./77 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/5000	175/1550 - 4100	4/1197
Performance and Weights		**MG6**
Top speed (km/h)		193
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		10.2
Operating weight - minimal (kg)		1170
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Increases up to 12 %	1100
	Increases up to 8 %	1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		580

1.4 ltr./90 kW TSI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
90/5000	200/1500 - 4000	4/1390
Performance and Weights		**DSG7**
Top speed (km/h)		203
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		9.4
Operating weight - minimal (kg)		1225
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Increases up to 12 %	1200
	Increases up to 8 %	1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		610

1.6 l/77 kW MPI engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/5600	153/3800	4/1598

Performance and Weights		MG5	AG6
Top speed (km/h)		191	190
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		10.5	11.8
Operating weight - minimal (kg)		1150	1190
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Increases up to 12 %	1000	1000
	Increases up to 8 %	1200	1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		570	590

1.6 ltr./66 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
66/4200	230/1500 - 2500	4/1598

Performance and Weights		MG5	MG5 Green Line	DSG7
Top speed (km/h)		182	184	182
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		11.9	11.9	12.1
Operating weight - minimal (kg)		1260	1258	1280
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Increases up to 12 %	1200	1000	1200
	Increases up to 8 %	1200	1000	1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		630	628	640

1.6 ltr./77 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW per rpm)	Max. torque (Nm per rpm)	Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)
77/4400	250/1500 - 2500	4/1598
Performance and Weights		**MG5**
Top speed (km/h)		190
Acceleration 0 - 100 km/h (s)		10.3
Operating weight - minimal (kg)		1260
Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)	Increases up to 12 %	1200
	Increases up to 8 %	1200
Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)		630

Index

A

abroad
lead-free petrol 139
Abroad
Headlights 63
ABS
Function 113
Warning light 37
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 131
Accessories 128
Adjusting
Belt height 15
Exterior mirror 68
head restraints 70
Interior mirror 67
Seat 69
Steering wheel 10
Adjusting the seats 9
Adjustment
Beam range 58
Air-conditioning system
Air outlet vents 90
Airbag 16
Deactivating 20
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 20
Deployment 16
Front airbag 17
Head airbag 19
Indicator light 39
Modifications and damage to the airbag system 130
Side airbag 18
Airbag system 16
Air conditioning 89
Air distribution control 90
Climatronic 92
manual air conditioning 91
Air distribution control 90
Air outlet vents 90
Alarm
Switching off 53
Triggering 53
Alcantara
cleaning 137
Anti-lock Braking System 113
Anti-theft alarm system
Activating/deactivating 54
Trailer 126
Anti-theft wheel bolts 164
Armrest
Front 72
Rear 72
artificial leather 137
Ashtray 76
ASR
Warning light 37
Assembling the
bar ball, Step 1 122
bar ball, Step 2 122
Assist system
ABS 113
Assist systems 113
ABS 37
ASR 37
Cruise Control System 115
EDL 114
ESC 37, 113
HBA 114
HHC 114
Parking aid 114
START-STOP 116
TCS 113
Audio
see radio / navigation system 4
Auto Check Control 33
Automatic driving lamp control 60
Automatic gearbox 108
Manual shifting of gears 110
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 171
Selector lever lock 109
Starting-off and driving 110
Tiptronic 110
Using the selector lever 109
Automatic gearbox modes 109
Automatic load deactivation 151
automatic transmission
selector lever lock defect 110
Automatic transmission
Kickdown 110
Selector lever lock 109
AUX 101

B

Ball head
Check fitting 123
Ready position 121
Battery
In the remote control key 170
Belts 12
Belt tensioners 15
Bonnet
Closing 142
Opening 142
Boot
Cargo element 84
Class N1 vehicles 85
Double-sided floor covering 85
Hooks 82
See Boot lid 55
Storage compartments 83
Boot cover
Parking position 83
Boot lid
automatic locking 55
Closing 55
Opening 55

Brake
Warning light 35
Brake booster 107
brake fluid
specification 148
Brake fluid 147
Checking 148
Information messages 35
brake pedal (automatic gearbox)
indicator light 41
brakes
Driving in 111
Brakes
Brake booster 107
Brake fluid 148
Braking and stabilisation systems 113
Handbrake 107
Information messages 35
Brakes and parking 106
Braking
Information on braking 106
Bulb failure
Warning light 38
Bulbs
Warning light 38
Buttons in the door
Power windows 55

C

Car care
Jack 135
Car computer
See multifunction display 43
Care and maintenance 128
Cargo element 84
Car park ticket holder 74
Carrier
Roof rack 88
Cavity protection 135
Central locking 49
Problems 53
Central locking button 52
Change
Engine oil 144
light bulb in tail light 179
Changing
bulbs 176
Front turn signal bulb 178
Wheels 160
Changing a wheel
Follow-up work 162
Preliminary work 161
Removing and attaching a wheel 162
Charging a vehicle battery 150
Check
Fit ball head properly 123
Checking
Battery electrolyte level 150
Brake fluid 148
Coolant 147
Engine oil 145
Oil level 145
Windscreen washer fluid 143
Checks
Statutory checks 128
Children and safety 22
Child safety
Side airbag 24
Child safety lock 53
Child seat
Classification 24
ISOFIX 25
on the front passenger seat 23
TOP TETHER 26
Use of child seats 24
Use of ISOFIX child seats 25
Chrome parts
see vehicle care 133
Cigarette lighter 75
cleaning
chrome parts 133
Cleaning
Alcantara 137
and maintaining belts 138
artificial leather 137
headlight glasses 134
materials 137
natural leather 136
plastic parts 133
seats covers of the electrically heated seats 138
wheels 135
Cleaning safety
belt 138
Cleaning seat
covers 138
Cleaning the interior
artificial leather 137
Seat covers 138
Cleaning the outside of the vehicle
Decorative films 134
Cleaning the vehicle exterior
Cavity protection 135
Door locking cylinder 135
Headlight glasses 134
Towing device 135
Under-body protection 135
wheels 135
Windows and external mirrors 134
Cleaning vehicle 131
Cleaning vehicle exterior 132
Plastic parts 133
Rubber seals 133
Vehicle paint work 133
Wiper blades 136
Clean interior
Safety belt 138
clean outside of vehicle
chrome parts 133

Climatronic
air distribution control 90
Operating elements 92
Clothes hook 79
Cockpit
12-Volt power outlet 76
Ashtray 76
Cigarette lighter 75
General view 29
Lights 63
storage compartments 73
useful equipment 73
COMING HOME 62
compartments 73
Components of the puncture repair kits 165
Computer
See multifunction display 43
convenience turn signal 60
Coolant 146
Checking 147
Information messages 36
Replenishing 147
Temperature gauge 32
Warning light 36
Cooling system
cost-effective use 93
malfunctions 93
CORNER
See Fog lights with CORNER function 61
Correct seated position 9
Driver 9
Front passenger 10
Instructions 11
Rear seats 11
Counter for distance driven 33
cruise control
operation 115
operation description 116
Cruise control system
Warning light 41
Cruise Control System 115
Cup holders 74

D

DAY LIGHT
See Daytime running lights 59
Daytime running lights 59
Dazzle
see sun screen of the panoramic roof 65
De-icing
windows 134
Deactivating an airbag 20
Decorative films 134
Defrosting rear window 64
Delayed locking of the boot lid
see boot lid 55
Departure angle 184
Diesel
refer to Fuel 140
Diesel fuel
Operation in winter 140
Diesel particle filter
Information notices 38
Warning light 38
Digital Clock
Time 33
Dipstick 145
Disconnecting and reconnecting
vehicle battery 151
Display 31
Compass points 47
Coolant temperature 32
Fuel supply 32
Gear changes 43
Service intervals 47
Display a low temperature 42
Display of the second speed 33
Disposal
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 131
Distance driven 33
Door
Child safety lock 53
Closing 51
Emergency locking 171
Opening 51
Warning light for open door 36
Door open
Warning light 36
Double-sided floor covering 85
Driving
Driving through water 111
Emissions 182
Fuel consumption 182
Maximum speed 185
off made-up roads 111
Driving in
Brake linings 111
the engine 111
Tyres 111
Driving off made-up roads 111
Driving through water 111

E

Economical driving
Tips 111
EDL 114
Electrical power windows
Button in the passenger door 56
Buttons in the driver's door 56
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 114
Electronic immobilizer 104
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) 113
Emergency
Changing a wheel 160
Hazard warning light system 62
Jump-starting 166, 167
Locking the door without a locking cylinder 171
Selector lever-unlocking 171
Towing the vehicle 168

Towing the vehicle using the tow hitch 169
tyre repair 164
Unlocking the tailgate 171
Emergency equipment
Fire extinguisher 158
First-aid kit 158
Jack 159
Reflective Vest 158
Vehicle tool kit 159
Warning triangle 158
emergency wheel 159
Emissions 182
Engine
Switching off the engine 105
Engine compartment 141
Brake fluid 148
Overview 143
Vehicle battery 148
Engine number 181
engine oil
specification 144
Engine oil 144
change 144
Checking 145
Information messages 36
Replenishing 146
Warning light 36
EPC
Warning light 38
ESC
Function 113
Warning light 37
Exhaust inspection system
Warning light 38

F

Fastening elements 81
Films 134
Fire extinguisher 158
First-aid kit 158
Flashing 60
Flexible storage compartment 84
Fog lights 61
Warning light 40
Fog lights with CORNER function 61
Footmats 108
refer to footmats 108
Force limit
Power windows 56
Front airbag 17
fuel
lead-free petrol 139
Fuel 138
Diesel 140
Fuel gauge 32
refer to Fuel 138
Refuelling 139
Fuel consumption 182
Fuel reserve
Warning light 39
Fuses
Assignment 173
Assignment of fuses in the dash panel 174
Colour coding 173
Fuse assignment in the engine compartment 175
Replacing 173
Fuses in the engine compartment
Assignment 175

G

Gearbox
Warning messages 33
Gear change
Gear recommendation 43
Information on the selected gear 43
Gear changing
Gear stick 108
gears
spare 160
General view
Cockpit 29
Generator
Indicator light 35
Genuine parts 129
Glasses compartment 78
Glow plug system
Warning light 38
GSM 94

H

Handbrake 107
Warning light 35
Hazard warning light system 62
HBA 114
Head airbag 19
Headlight cleaning system
Headlight cleaning system 67
Headlights
Bulb arrangement 176
Driving abroad 63
Headlight cleaning system 67
Head restraints 70
Adjust height 70
Headrest,
removing and installing 70
Heating 89
Air distribution control 90
Control elements 91
Exterior mirror 68
Rear window 64
Seats 71
Heating rear window 64
HHC 114
Hill Hold Control (HHC) 114

Hitch 120
Accessories 124
Drawback load 120
Hooks 82
Horn 29
Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA) 114

I

Ice scrapers 134
Ignition 105
Ignition lock 105
Immobilizer 104
Indicator lights 34
Individual settings
Locking 52
Unlocking 52
Inertia reels 15
Information system 41
Compass point display 47
Display a low temperature 42
Door warning 43
Gear recommendation 43
MAXI DOT display 46
Multifunction display 43
Operation 42
Service interval display 47
instrument cluster
Auto Check Control 33
Instrument cluster 30
Counter for distance driven 33
Display 31
Display of the second speed 33
Fuel gauge 32
Indicator lights 34
Overview 30
Revolution counter 31
see instrument cluster 30
Speedometer 31
Temperature gauge 32
Interior care 136
Natural leather 136
interior light
Front 63
Interior monitor 54
ISOFIX 25

J

Jack 159
Maintenance 135
Jacking points
Raise vehicle 163
Jump-starting 166, 167

K

Key
Lock 50
Start engine 105
Unlock 50

L

Leather
Natural leather care 136
LEAVING HOME 62
Lever
Main beam 60
Turn signal 60
Windscreen wipers 66
lever lock selection (automatic gearbox)
indicator light 41
Light
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 62
Daytime running lights 59
Fog lights with CORNER function 61
Parking light 63
Lighting
Luggage compartment 80
Lights 58
Automatic driving lamp control 60
Beam range adjustment 58
Cockpit 63
Fog lights 61
Hazard warning light system 62
Headlight flasher 60
Indicator lights 34
Low beam 58
Main beam 60
Parking light 58
Rear fog light 61
Replacing bulbs 176
switching on/off 58
Turn signal 60
Lock
Key 50
Lock/unlock steering lock 104
Locking
Individual settings 52
Remote control 50
Locking and unlocking the vehicle from the inside 52
Locking the door without a locking cylinder
Emergency 171
Low beam 58
Low tyre pressure warning
refer to the tyre pressure monitoring 119
Luggage compartment 80
Cover 82
Emergency unlocking 171
Fastening elements 81
Fixing nets 81
Flexible storage compartment 84
Lighting 80
Unlocking the tailgate 171
Variable loading floor 85
Luggage compartment cover 82
Luggage compartment lid 54

Luggage Storage
Storage net bag 84

M

Main beam 60
Warning light 41
Maintenance
see vehicle care 133
Manual air conditioning
Air distribution control 90
Operating elements 91
Manual gear changing
refer to gear changing 108
MAXI DOT
See MAXI DOT display 46
MAXI DOT display 46
Main menu 46
Operation 42
Settings 47
Maximum
permissible weights 181
Maximum speed 185
MDI 101
Mechanical windows 57
open and close 57
Media
see radio / navigation system 4
MFD
See multifunction display 43
Mirror
Exterior mirror 68
Make-up 65
Mobile phone 94
Connecting to the hands-free system 96
Modifications 128
Modifications and technical alterations
Airbags 130
Service 129
Spoiler 130
Multifunction display
Functions 43
Information 45
Memory 44
Operation 42
Multimedia 99
Multimedia holder 77

N

N1 85
Nameplate 181
Navigation system 4
Nets 81
Notes for driving with tyre repaired 166
Notes on using wheels 152

O

Oil
Information messages 36
See Engine oil 145
Oil pressure
Information messages 36
On-board computer
See multifunction display 43
Operating weight 181
Operation in winter
Diesel fuel 140
Vehicle battery 150
Original accessories 129
Outside temperature 45
Overview
Engine compartment 143
Indicator lights 34

P

Parking 107
Parking aid 114
Parking aid 114
Function 115
Parking light 58
Parking space 107
Parking vehicle
Parking 107
Passive safety
Before setting off 8
Driving safety 8
Safety equipment 8
Passive Safety 8
Payload 181
Pedals 108
Footmats 108
Petrol
see fuel 139
Plastic parts 133
Pockets on the front seat rests 80
Polishing vehicle paint work
see vehicle care 133
Power outlet
12 V 76
Power steering
Warning light 37
Power windows 55
Practical equipment
12-Volt power outlet 76
Net pockets on the front seat rests 80
Reflective Vest 158
Practical features
Storage pockets on the front seats 79
Waste container 77
Puncture set 164

R

Radiator fan 143
Radio 4
Raise vehicle 163
Rear
interior light 64

Rear fog light 61
Warning light 38
Rear mirror 67
Exterior mirror 68
Interior mirror 67
Refuelling 139
Fuel 139
Remote control
Locking 50
Replacing the battery 170
Synchronisation process 170
Unlocking 50
Remote control key
Replacing the battery 170
Removing the
bar ball, Step 1 123
bar ball, Step 2 123
Repairs and technical alterations 128
Replacement parts 128
Replacing
Bulb for main beam, daytime running lights and parking light 177
Bulb for the fog light 178
Bulb for the licence plate light 179
Bulb in rear light 180
Fuses 173
Fuses in the dash panel 173
Fuses in the engine compartment 175
High beam bulb (halogen headlights) 177
Rear window wiper blade 172
Vehicle battery 151
windscreen wiper blades 172
Replenishing
Coolant 147
Engine oil 146
Windscreen washer fluid 143
Retraction and economical driving 111
Revolution counter 31
Roof
Load 88
Roof rack 88
mounting points 88
Roof load 88
Rubber seals 133

S

SAFE
See Safe securing system 51
SAFELOCK
See Safe securing system 51
Safe securing system 51
Safety 8
Child safety 22
Child safety seats 22
Correct seated position 9
Head restraints 70
ISOFIX 25
TOP TETHER 26
Save electrical energy 111
Save fuel 111
Seals
Vehicle care 133
Seat
Adjusting 69
Seat belt
Warning light 35
Seat belts 12
Belt tensioners 15
fastening and unfastening 14
Height adjustment 15
Inertia reels 15
The physical principle of a frontal collision 13
Seat features 71
Seats
Front armrest 72
Head restraints 70
Heating 71
Rear armrest 72
Seat backrests 72
Seats and head restraint 69
Selector lever
Refer to Selector lever 109
Service 129
Service interval display 47
Setting 33
Lower position of the variable loading floor 86
seats and head restraints 69
Upper position of the variable loading floor 85
Setting the 33
Side airbag 18
SmartGate
connection 102
Password 103
Settings 102
Smart Gate
Website 102
Snow chains 157
Spare
change 160
spare wheel 159
change 160
instructions 160
Speedometer 31
See speedometer 31
Speed symbol
Refer to Wheels 155
Spoiler 130
Staring engine
Jump-starting 167
START-STOP 116
Jump-starting 167
Manually deactivating/activating the system 118
Operating conditions of the system 117
operation in vehicles with automatic gearbox 117
operation in vehicles with manual gearbox 117
system-related automatic start-up 118
Start engine 105
Starting engine
Jump-starting 166

START STOP
Information messages 118
Stating and turning off the engine 104
Steering wheel 10
Stopping 107
Storage 73
Storage compartment
Glasses compartment 78
in the boot 83
in the centre console 74
in the front arm rest 78
on the front passenger side 78
Storage compartments 73
Storage net bag 84
Storage pockets on the front seats 79
Stowage
compartments in the doors 74
Sun visors 65
Switching off the engine 105
Switch light on/off 58
Switch off ignition 105
Switch on ignition 105

T

Taking care of your vehicle
Automatic car wash system 132
High-pressure cleaner 132
Washing by hand 131
Wash system 132
TCS
Operation 113
Technical data 181
Telephone 94
Tiptronic 110
Tools 159
TOP TETHER 26
Towing 168
Towing a trailer 126
Towing device
Description 120
Operation and maintenance 135
Towing eye
Front 169
Rear 169
Towing protection 54
Traction Control System (TCS) 113
Trailer 125
13-pin socket 125
connection and disconnection 125
Loading 126
Safety eye 125
Towing a trailer 126
Trailer operation 120
Transport
Luggage compartment 80
Roof rack 88
Transporting 73
Transporting children safely 22
Triangle 158
Turn signal 60
Turn signal system
Warning light 40
two-way radio systems 94
Tyre
Damage 154
Explanation of the labelling 155
see wheels 155
Tyre inflation pressure
Warning light 40
Tyre load-bearing capacity
Refer to Wheels 155
Tyre pressure 153
Tyre pressure monitoring 119
Save tyre pressure values 119
Tyre repair
General notes 165
Preparations 165
Pressure test 166
Sealing and inflating the tyre 166
Tyres 152
new 111
Tyre pressure 153
Wear and tear 153
Wear indicators 154
Tyre size 155
see wheels 155

U

Under-body
Vehicle care 135
Under-body protection 135
Unlock
Key 50
Unlocking
Individual settings 52
Remote control 50
Unlocking and locking 49
USB 101
Used vehicles
Acceptance and recycling 131
Useful equipment
Ashtray 76
Car park ticket holder 74
Cigarette lighter 75
Clothes hook 79
Cup holders 74
Glasses compartment 78
Multimedia holder 77
Storage compartment 73
Using the information system 42
Using the selector lever 109

V

Variable loading floor 85
Folding up 87
Inserting 86

Lower position 86
Parking position 87
Removing 86
Upper position 85
Vehicle battery
Automatic load deactivation 151
charging 150
Checking the battery electrolyte level 150
Cover 149
Operation in winter 150
Replacing 151
Safety instructions 148
vehicle care
chrome parts 133
Vehicle care
Alcantara 137
Artificial leather 137
Cavity protection 135
Cleaning vehicle exterior 132
Cleaning wheels 135
Decorative films 134
Door locking cylinder 135
Headlight glasses 134
Interior care 136
Maintenance 133
Materials 137
Natural leather 136
Plastic parts 133
Polishing vehicle paint work 133
Rubber seals 133
Safety belt 138
Seat covers 138
Under-body protections 135
washing 131
Vehicle Condition
see Auto Check Control 33
Vehicle data sticker 181
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate 181
Vehicle dimensions 183
Vehicle height 183
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 181
Vehicle length 183
Vehicle tool kit 159
Vehicle width 183
Vest
Placement of the reflective vest 158
VIN
Vehicle Identification Number 181
Visibility 64
Visors
See front sun visors 65

W

Warning at excessive speeds 46
Warning triangle 158
Washing
Automatic car wash system 132
by hand 131
High-pressure cleaner 132
Washing vehicles 131
Waste container 77
Water
Driving through 111
Weather conditions 128
Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolts 164
Caps 161
Loosening and tightening 162
Wheel rims 152
wheels
spare wheel 160
Wheels
Age of wheels 152
Changing 160
Driving style 153
Full trim 161
General information 152
Load index 155
Snow chains 157
Speed symbol 155
Storage of wheels 152
Tyre damage 154
Tyre pressure 153
Tyre size 155
Tyre wear 153
Tyre wear indicator 154
Unidirectional tyres 155
Wheel balance 153
Wheels exchange 154
Winter tyres 157
Wi-Fi
Password 102, 103
Settings 102
Website 102
Window
Interior mirror 67
Window wiper
Replacing the rear window wiper blade 172
Windscreen washer fluid
Checking 143
Replenishing 143
Warning light 40
Winter 143
Windscreen washer system 143
Windscreen wipers 66
Windscreen wipers
Activating 66
Replacing the windscreen wipers 172
Windscreen washer fluid 143
Windscreen wipers and washers 65
Winter operation 156
De-icing windows 134
Snow chains 157
Winter tyres 157
Winter tyres
See Wheels 157
Wiper blades 136
Service position of the windscreen wiper arms 172

Wipers
Maintaining wiper blades _____ 136

Reprinting, reproduction, translation, or any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2014

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA service in your pocket

The application ŠKODA service is provided for Smartphones with Android or iPhone systems. This task is mainly to help you as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO in difficult situations when on the road.

My Dealer – select your preferred dealer and read about their current offer or ŠKODA news.

Assistance – Contact a breakdown recovery service, find the nearest dealer when on the road and use the service Parking Helper.

My car – the complete operating instructions and a summary list of all the warning lights for a quick overview, a guide for media systems and Quick Tips.



Ready for download in the AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – get to know your vehicle

The application ŠKODA Manual is designed for tablet users with the systems Android and iOS, who have an interest in getting to know the ŠKODA vehicle brand or already have one. The application contains the complete version of the electronic manual for all current models of the ŠKODA brand. Furthermore, it contains a list of all warning lights, a guide for media systems as well as a picture diagram of the Quick Tips.

Some of the main functions of the application include:

› Easy content navigation
› Easy content reading
› Full text search through the entire manual
› Tab for quick access to favourite chapter



Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

www.skoda-auto.com

You also can do something for the environment!

The fuel consumption of your ŠKODA and the related pollutant emissions are determined crucially on how you drive.

The noise and the wear of the vehicle depend on the way how you deal with your vehicle.

This Owner's Manual shows you how to use your ŠKODA vehicle with utmost care for the environment while driving economically at the same time.

Also please pay attention to those parts in the Owner's Manual that are marked below.

Work with us – for the sake of the environment.

Návod k obsluze
Rapid Spaceback anglicky 11.2014
S57.5610.03.20
5JJ012720AC



5JJ012720AC